

## Remote control key



- A. Central locking
- B. Unlocking
- C. Guide-me-home lighting
- D. Key release/storage

## Opening

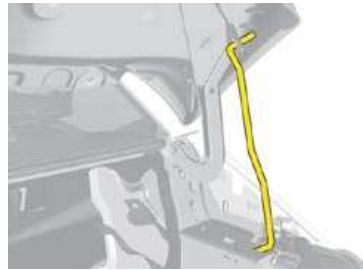
Using the multifunction screen, you can choose from the following options when opening your vehicle with the remote control:

- either all of the doors and the tail-gate,
- or the driver's door with a first press, then all of the other doors with a second press.

» 68

## Bonnet opening/closing

To unlock, pull the control located under the dashboard towards you.



**Bonnet stay:** detach the stay and pivot it upwards to insert it into the notch.



**To close:** move the stay back to its initial position, lower the bonnet, then allow it to slam shut at the end of its travel.

» 158

## Fuel tank

**Capacity:** approximately 60 litres.



Press control **A**, located on the switch panel to the left of the dashboard. The fuel flap automatically opens up fully. Insert the nozzle so as to push in the metal flap **B**. Push the fuel flap to close it.

» 82

After switching off the ignition, control **A** is only active for a few minutes. If necessary, switch on the ignition again to reactivate it.

## Opening rear screen



This opening gives easy access to the boot, even if you are parked close to a wall or to another vehicle.

### Opening

- ☞ Press control 2. The handhold 4 is in line with the rear wiper.

### Closing

- ☞ Lower the rear screen.

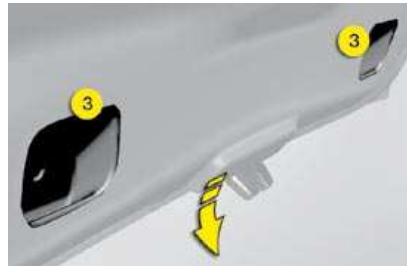
►► 80

## Opening the tailgate



- ☞ Press control 1.
- You cannot open the tailgate if the rear screen is already open.

## Closing the tailgate



- ☞ Lower the tailgate, using one of the handholds 3, located on the interior tailgate trim.
- ☞ Past the balancing point, allow the tailgate to close itself (do not assist it or slow it down).

## Modubox (CITROËN C4 Picasso)

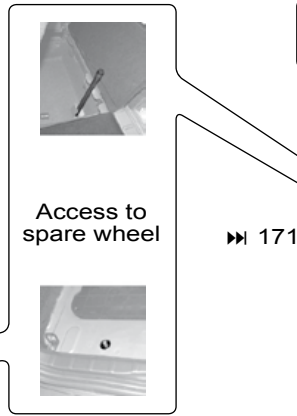
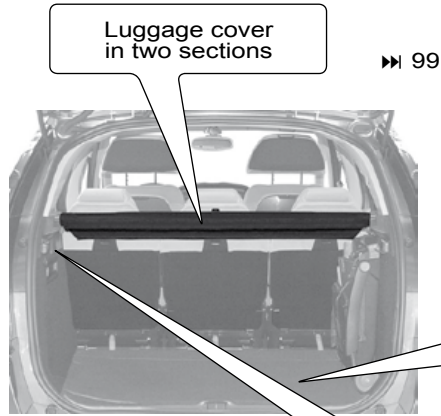


### Load: 22 kg maximum.

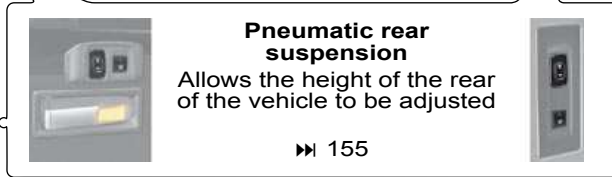
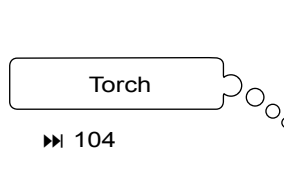
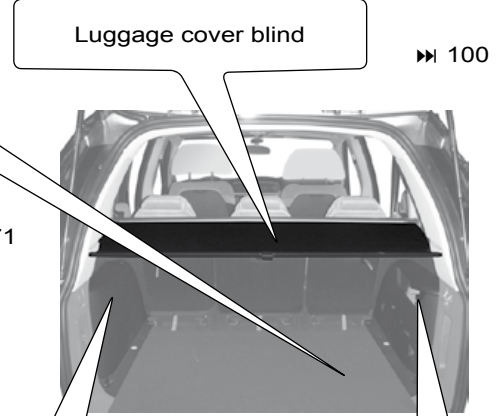
The Modubox is composed of a shopping trolley and a flexible bag which can be used independently of each other depending on your needs.

►► 100

## CITROËN C4 Picasso



## CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso



### Temporary puncture repair kit

Depending on model, the kit is located either in the boot well or in the compartment under the left hand second-row passenger (open the flap by turning the screw a quarter turn).

This kit is a complete system for a temporary repair; it is made up of a compressor and a sealing product.

Refer also to the section "Practical information - § Changing a wheel".

» 167

» 170



## 6-speed electronic gearbox

This offers a fully automatic mode, a manual mode and an auto-sequential mode which combines the advantages of the automatic and manual modes, using the paddles behind the steering wheel.

» 134

## Electric parking brake

For holding and releasing the vehicle. Operation is automatic with manual operation possible using the dashboard control.

» 126

## Scented air freshener

This diffuses the fragrance that you have chosen throughout the passenger compartment from its location in the ventilation system.

» 55

## Speed limiter/Cruise control

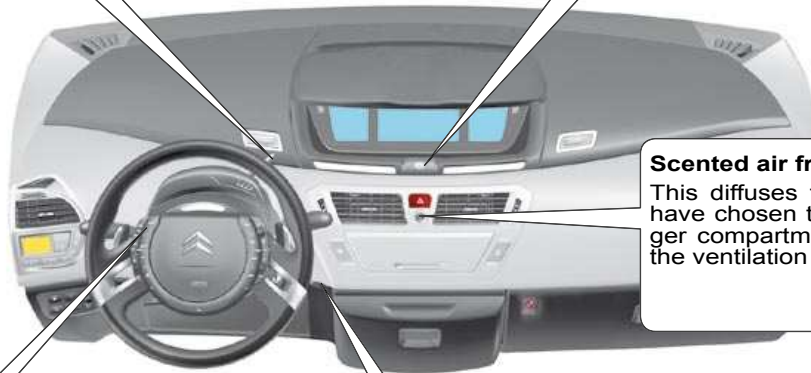
These functions control the speed of the vehicle to the value that you have programmed.

» 145, 147

## Ambiance lighting

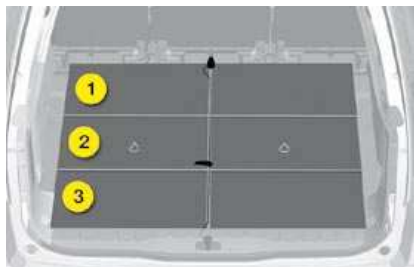
This soft lighting of the passenger compartment improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

» 92



## THIRD - ROW SEATS CITROËN GRAND C4 PICASSO

### Installing the seats



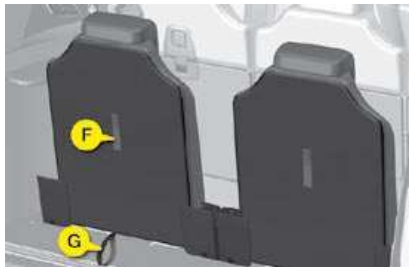
Fold the concertina boards (1 2 3) arranged above each of the third-row seats.

Pull on the black strap **F**, located on the seat backrest.

» 64

Before moving the third-row seats, do not forget to lock in the rigid panels first (located at the base of the second-row seat backrests).

### Stowing the seats



Put the three sections of the concertina boards (1 2 3) to their vertical position, then pull on the red strap **G**.

Before moving the third-row seats, return the rigid panels to the upright position and lock them.

Do not leave objects either on or underneath the second-row seats when you are folding them.

### Access to third-row seats

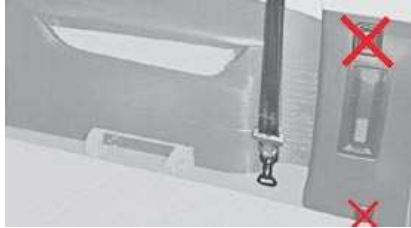


Pull on control **E**, located at the top of the second-row seats backrest.

» 63

## THIRD - ROW SEATS CITROËN GRAND C4 PICASSO

### Advice on third-row passenger seat belts



Take care to attach the third-row passenger seat belts to the rings provided for this purpose.

**Do not attach the belts to the load anchorage points marked with a red cross (see illustration above).**



**Stowing the tongue of the third-row seat belt**

» 120

## SECOND - ROW SEATS

### Folding the seats



#### From outside

- ☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the red arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.

#### From the boot - whilst loading, for example (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)

Having firstly folded the third-row seats.

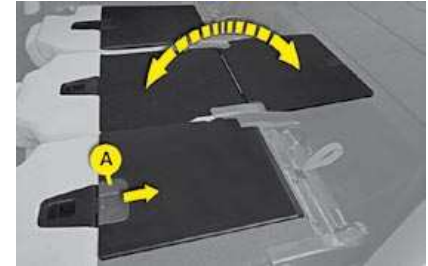
- ☞ Pull on strap **D** to unlock the required seat.

#### Repositioning the seats

Return the rigid panels of the second-row seats to their initial (upright) position and lock them in position (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso).

Raise the backrest and push it backwards until it locks in position.

### Rigid panel (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)



A rigid panel is attached to each second-row seat backrest.

#### Unlocking/Locking the rigid panel

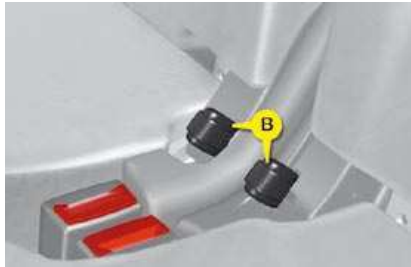
- ☞ Slide latch **A** of the panel downwards, to unlock it.
- ☞ Return the panel to the upright position, then slide latch **A** upwards to lock it.

Before deploying the rigid panels, check that the second row seats are in their fully rear position.

» 62

## SECOND - ROW SEATS

### "Comfort" position



The 3 second-row seats are independent of each other and are all the same width. They can all be adjusted to the "comfort" position.

#### Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

- ☞ Pull on strap **B**.

The backrest reclines and the seat base pivots slightly.

#### Returning the seat to its original position

- ☞ Pull on strap **B** and guide the seat forwards.

▶▶ 60

### Longitudinal adjustment



Lift up control **A**, located at the front of the seat, and adjust the seat into the desired position.

### Positioning the central seat belt



- ☞ Insert tongue **C** into the buckle on the right, then insert the second tongue **D** into the buckle on the left.

▶▶ 119

# DASHBOARD



# DASHBOARD

1. Controls:
  - Rear view mirrors
  - Windows
  - Child safety
2. Side air vent
3. Driver's air conditioning controls
4. Controls:
  - Lighting
  - Direction indicators
  - Front and rear foglamps
5. Paddles for automatic gearbox or 6-speed electronic gearbox
6. Cruise control and speed limiter (controls on steering wheel)
7. Driver's front airbag
8. Direction indicator warning lamps
9. Left hand upper storage
10. Audio and telematics system controls on steering wheel
11. Selector for automatic gearbox or 6-speed electronic gearbox
12. Controls:
  - Windscreen wipe
  - Screen wash
  - Rear screen wipe
  - Trip computer
13. Controls:
  - Trip mileage recorder reset button
  - Lighting rheostat
  - CHECK or COLOR (choice of background colour)
  - Personalisation
14. Warning lamps display (NaviDrive)
15. Central air vents
16. Electric parking brake
17. Instrument panel
18. Hazard warning lamps
19. Right hand upper storage
20. Front passenger's airbag
21. Loudspeaker (Tweeter) (right and left)
22. Passenger's air conditioning controls
23. Lower glovebox:
  - Air freshener clips
  - Various storage
24. Key switch:
  - Front passenger's airbag activation/deactivation
25. Central locking button
26. Audio and telematics system
27. Scented air freshener
28. Refrigerated storage
29. 12 V accessories socket or USB port
30. Removable ashtray
31. 12 V accessories socket or lighter
32. ESP deactivation button
33. Ambiance lighting control
34. Steering lock - Ignition switch
35. Controls for multifunction screen (on steering wheel)
36. Horn
37. Optional function controls (on steering wheel)
38. Fusebox access flap
39. Controls:
  - Fuel flap
  - Parking assistance
  - Lane departure warning system
  - Volumetric alarm deactivation
  - Headlamps adjustment
40. Bonnet release

## Front seats



## Manual adjustments



**Head restraint**



**Armrest**



**Backrest angle**



**Seat height adjustment**

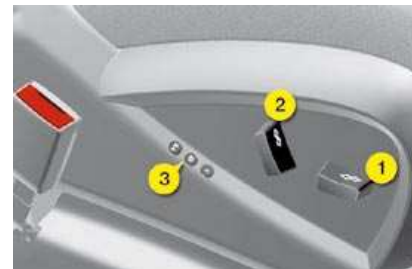


**Lumbar support**



**Longitudinal adjustment**

## Electric adjustments



1. Adjustment of seat height, angle and longitudinal position
2. Adjustment of backrest angle and lumbar support
3. Driver: memorisation of driving positions

The seats can also be adjusted on a temporary basis:

- on opening one of the front doors,
- after switching on the ignition.

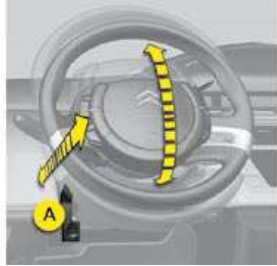


**Heated seat control** (located on the inside of the front seats)

» 58

» 57

## Adjusting the steering wheel



The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and reach.

Unlock the steering wheel by pulling lever **A** towards you.

Adjust the position of the steering wheel then lock it pushing the lever fully back.

» 67

## Automatic photochromic interior rear view mirror



It automatically and progressively changes between day use and night use.

» 67

## Child monitoring mirror

This additional mirror **1** allows you to monitor the rear passengers. It can be tilted to eliminate dazzle.

» 93

## Rear view mirrors adjustment



This operates with the ignition switched on. From the driver's seat, select the rear view mirror by moving control **1** to the left or right, then adjust the rear view mirror as required in four directions using control **2**.

Demisting-defrosting of the rear view mirrors is linked to that of the rear screen.

## Rear view mirrors foldback

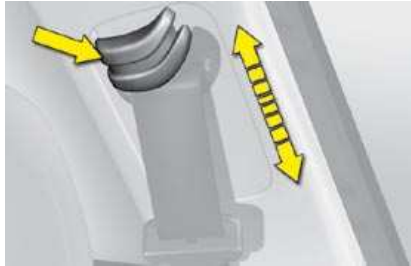
When the vehicle is parked, the rear view mirrors can be folded back either manually or automatically.

» 66

For safety reasons, these adjustments must not be carried out whilst driving.



## Adjusting the seat belt height



To adjust the seat belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

» 118

## Electric windows controls



From the driver's seat position, the controls located on the door are used to operate the electric windows.

» 76

## Sliding sun visors



- ☞ Slide the blind on the visor to the desired position by pushing the area **A**. The blinds are extended on the sun visor rails.
- ☞ Fold the visor downwards, to prevent being dazzled.

» 93

## Panoramic glass roof blind

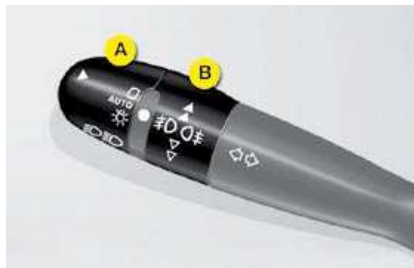
Opening (positions **1** to **9**)

Closing (position **0**)

The blind has an anti-pinch system.

» 81

## Lighting stalk



### Ring A

1. Off
2. Automatic lighting
3. Sidelamps
4. Dipped beam/Main beam

» 84

### Ring B

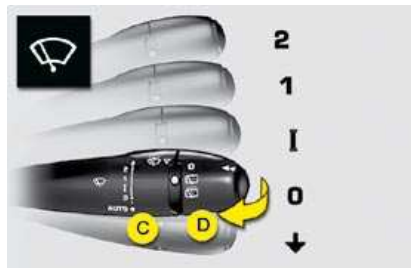
- Front foglamps
- Rear foglamp

» 85

Under certain climatic conditions (low temperature, humid), the presence of condensation on the inner surfaces of the headlamps and rear lamps is not an indication of a fault; this disappears a few minutes after switching on the lamps.

» 174

## Wiper stalk



### Stalk C: windscreen wiper

#### Switching on "AUTO" mode

☞ Press the stalk down and release.

#### Switching off "AUTO" mode

☞ Press the stalk up and return it to position "0".

Automatic wiper must be reactivated each time the vehicle is started.

### Ring D: rear screen wiper



Stop.

Intermittent.

Timed wash and wipe.

» 89

## Fixed centred controls steering wheel



1. Optional function controls
2. Cruise control/speed limiter and parking space sensor
3. Audio system controls
4. Multifunction screen controls
5. Horn
6. Warning lamps for direction indicators and vehicle lamps

» 143

» 113

» 27

## 6-speed electronic gearbox system



- R** Reverse
- N** Neutral
- A** Automatic mode
- M** Manual mode

Using control paddles 1 "+" and 2 "-":

- gear changing in manual mode,
- temporary manual operation in automatic mode.



### Starting

- ☞ Check that the selector **3** is in neutral (position **N**).
- ☞ Press firmly on the brake pedal and turn the ignition key.

▶▶ 134

## Automatic gearbox



- P** Park
- R** Reverse
- N** Neutral
- D** Automatic mode
- M** Sequential mode

Using control paddles 1 "+" and 2 "-":

- gear changing in sequential mode,
- temporary manual operation in automatic mode.

### Starting

- ☞ Check that the selector **3** is in position **P** or **N** and turn the ignition key.
- To exit position **P**, press on the brake pedal before moving the selector.

▶▶ 139

## Electric parking brake



This device combines:

- automatic functions: Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (automatic operation by default);
- manual use: Manual application/release of parking brake is possible by operating control lever **A**.

When in automatic mode, it remains possible to apply or release the parking brake at any time:

- ☞ To apply it, pull on the lever **A**.
- ☞ To release it, pull then release lever **A**.

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the electric parking brake warning lamp **P** (red) is permanently on.

If you leave the vehicle with the engine running, manually apply the parking brake.

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

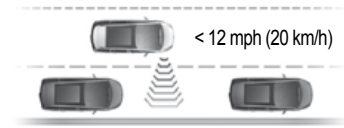
» 126

## Hill start assist

To aid starting on a gradient, your vehicle is equipped with a system which keeps it immobilised for about 2 seconds, the approximate time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

» 133

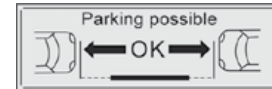
## Parking space sensor



You can select this function by pressing button **A**.

Once the space has been measured, the system displays the following messages:

### Parking possible



### Parking difficult



### Parking not advised



» 149

## Automatic air conditioning

### Driver's and front passenger's control panel



1. Automatic comfort regulation.
2. Adjustment and display of driver's temperature.
3. Adjustment of air blower speed. Maintaining of ventilation with the engine switched off (REST).
4. Adjustment and display of air distribution.
5. Air recirculation.
6. Mode of adjustment for rear passengers.



7. Panel and buttons display mode (black panel).
8. Demisting/defrosting of rear screen and rear view mirrors.
9. Rapid demisting/defrosting of wind-screen and windows.
10. Air conditioning.
11. Adjustment and display of front passenger's temperature.

» 49, 54

### Rear passengers' control panel



12. Adjustment of air blower speed. » 52
13. Temperature adjustment (no warm air distribution).
14. Adjustment of air blower speed. » 53

## Heating and manual air conditioning

### Driver's control panel

1. Adjustment and display of air blower speed.
2. Adjustment and display of air distribution.
3. Mode of adjustment of passenger's temperature.
4. Air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning (not available in heating version).
6. Demisting/defrosting of rear screen and rear view mirrors.
7. Demisting/defrosting of windscreen and windows.
8. Adjustment of blown air temperature.

» 47, 54



### Passenger's control panel

9. Adjustment of passenger's temperature on/off.
10. Adjustment of passenger's temperature.

» 48

## Instrument panel

with multifunction screen A

» 24



with multifunction screen C

» 25



with NaviDrive multifunction screen

» 26



1. Instrument panel.
2. Multifunction screen.
3. Control buttons.
4. Warning lamps display zone.

## Seat belts not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp



This warning lamp informs you if the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on model), and if the front passenger's (depending on model) or the second-row passengers' seat belts are unfastened. The lit up positions represent those whose seat belts are not fastened/unfastened.

## Locking from inside



You can use electrical central locking or unlocking by pressing on button **A**. If one of the doors is open or is not closed properly, central locking will not work.

## Anti-intrusion security

Once the function has been activated, when starting the engine, the system automatically locks the doors once you reach approximately 6 mph (10 km/h). This function can be deactivated by pressing button **A** for more than two seconds.

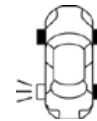
» 78

## Tyre under-inflation detection

This function warns you if a tyre is deflated or punctured.

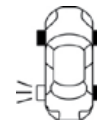
This system does not absolve the driver of the need to regularly check the tyre pressures.

## Under-inflation warning



The service warning lamp lights up, and a vehicle outline is displayed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

## Puncture



The **STOP** warning lamp lights up, and a vehicle outline is displayed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

» 114

## Front airbags



### Deactivation of front passenger airbag

1. Insert key in lock **A**.
2. Select "**OFF**" position.
3. Remove key.

» 122

## Child lock

### Manual control



The rear doors are locked by operating the lever (aperture at an angle).

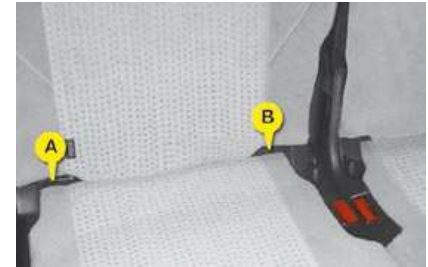
### Electric control



Pressing the button prohibits operation of the electric windows from the rear of the vehicle and opening of the rear doors.

» 112

## ISOFIX fixing system



The 3 second-row rear seats of your vehicle are fitted with regulation ISOFIX anchoring points, with 3 rings for each seat position **A B C**.

This fixing system is designed for children weighing up to 18 kg.

» 109



## I MONOCHROME INSTRUMENT PANEL MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN A

The instrument panel groups all the driving and comfort information at the centre of the dashboard.



### Central display

1. Rev counter
2. Electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox selector position and gear
3. Electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox "Foot on brake" warning lamp
4. Speedometer
5. Cruise control or speed limiter setting
6. Fuel gauge

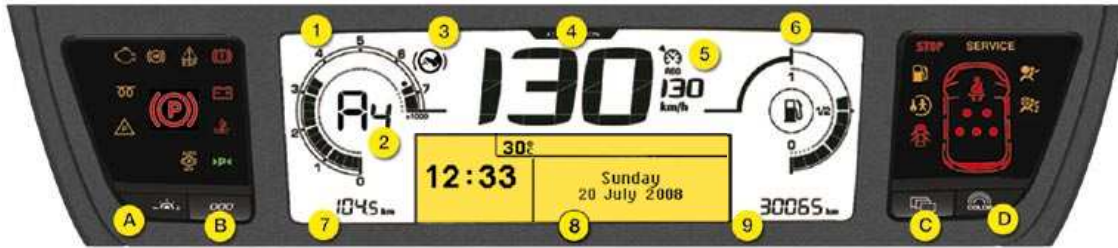
7. Trip mileage recorder
  8. Multifunction screen A
  9. Total mileage recorder
- In this zone, the following information appears in succession when the ignition is switched on:
- service indicator,
  - engine oil level indicator,
  - total mileage recorder.

### Control buttons

- A. Lighting rheostat (available day and night)
- B. Trip mileage recorder reset
- C. Personalisation of the instrument panel (display of desired information)
- D. CHECK (list of alerts)

## TWO - TONE INSTRUMENT PANEL MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN C

The instrument panel groups all the driving and comfort information at the centre of the dashboard.



### Central display

1. Rev counter
2. Electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox selector position and gear
3. Electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox "Foot on brake" warning lamp
4. Speedometer
5. Cruise control or speed limiter setting
6. Fuel gauge

7. Trip mileage recorder
  8. Multifunction screen C
  9. Total mileage recorder
- In this zone, the following information appears in succession when the ignition is switched on:
- service indicator,
  - engine oil level indicator,
  - total mileage recorder.

### Control buttons

- A. Lighting rheostat (available day and night)
- B. Trip mileage recorder reset
- C. Personalisation of the instrument panel (display of desired information)
- D. COLOUR (choice of background colour ranging from white to blue)

## NAVIDRIVE INSTRUMENT PANEL

### NAVIDRIVE MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN

The instrument panel groups all the driving and comfort information at the centre of the dashboard.



### Central display

1. Cruise control or speed limiter setting
2. Speeometer
3. NaviDrive multifunction screen (see "NaviDrive instructions")
4. Rev counter
5. Electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox "Foot on brake" warning lamp
6. Fuel gauge
7. Electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox selector position

8. Trip mileage recorder
9. Total mileage recorder  
In this zone, the following information appears in succession when the ignition is switched on:
  - service indicator,
  - engine oil level indicator,
  - total mileage recorder.

### Control buttons

- A. Personalisation of the instrument panel (display of desired information)
- B. COLOUR (choice of background colour ranging from white to blue)
- C. Lighting rheostat (available day and night)
- D. Trip mileage recorder reset

## Indicator and warning lamps



Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

### When the ignition is switched on

The warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should switch off.

If they remain on, before moving off, consult information on the warning lamp concerned.

### Associated warnings

The switching on of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously or flash.

Certain warning lamps may come on in two different modes. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operation of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

## Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.



**Front fog lamps.**



**Left-hand direction indicator.**



**Sidelamps.**



**Main beam headlamps.**



**Dipped headlamps.**



**Right-hand direction indicator.**



**Rear fog lamp.**

I



## Diesel engine pre-heating

Wait until this has gone out before operating the starter.

## "Foot on brake"



The flashing of this warning lamp on the display informs you that you need to press the brake pedal in order to be able to start the engine on a vehicle with the (6-speed) Electronic Gearbox System, or to quit position **P** in the case of an automatic gearbox.

This warning lamp comes on if you attempt to release the electric parking brake without pressing the brake pedal.

In the case of the Electronic Gearbox System, this warning lamp flashes to indicate overheating of the clutch if you excessively use the accelerator to hold the vehicle on an uphill slope. Use the brake pedal or the electric parking brake.

## Parking space available



This warning lamp comes on when the parking space function is selected.

It flashes while the space is being measured.

## Electric child lock



If lit, the child lock is activated. This warning lamp is displayed a few seconds after the function is activated.

## Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

### Passenger's air bag system deactivation



The passenger's air bag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control, located in the glove box, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel or a message on the NaviDrive multifunction screen.

### Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located on the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp and of the indicator lamp on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

## Warning lamps



When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lamps indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message on the multifunction screen.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer.

I



## Diesel engine pre-heating

Wait until this has gone out before operating the starter.

## "Foot on brake"



The flashing of this warning lamp on the display informs you that you need to press the brake pedal in order to be able to start the engine on a vehicle with the (6-speed) Electronic Gearbox System, or to quit position **P** in the case of an automatic gearbox.

This warning lamp comes on if you attempt to release the electric parking brake without pressing the brake pedal.

In the case of the Electronic Gearbox System, this warning lamp flashes to indicate overheating of the clutch if you excessively use the accelerator to hold the vehicle on an uphill slope. Use the brake pedal or the electric parking brake.

## Parking space available



This warning lamp comes on when the parking space function is selected.

It flashes while the space is being measured.

## Electric child lock



If lit, the child lock is activated. This warning lamp is displayed a few seconds after the function is activated.

## Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

### Passenger's air bag system deactivation



The passenger's air bag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control, located in the glove box, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel or a message on the NaviDrive multifunction screen.

### Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located on the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp and of the indicator lamp on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

## Warning lamps



When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lamps indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message on the multifunction screen.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer.

I



## Diesel engine pre-heating

Wait until this has gone out before operating the starter.

## "Foot on brake"



The flashing of this warning lamp on the display informs you that you need to press the brake pedal in order to be able to start the engine on a vehicle with the (6-speed) Electronic Gearbox System, or to quit position **P** in the case of an automatic gearbox.

This warning lamp comes on if you attempt to release the electric parking brake without pressing the brake pedal.

In the case of the Electronic Gearbox System, this warning lamp flashes to indicate overheating of the clutch if you excessively use the accelerator to hold the vehicle on an uphill slope. Use the brake pedal or the electric parking brake.

## Parking space available



This warning lamp comes on when the parking space function is selected.

It flashes while the space is being measured.

## Electric child lock



If lit, the child lock is activated. This warning lamp is displayed a few seconds after the function is activated.

## Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

### Passenger's air bag system deactivation



The passenger's air bag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control, located in the glove box, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel or a message on the NaviDrive multifunction screen.

### Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located on the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp and of the indicator lamp on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

## Warning lamps



When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lamps indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message on the multifunction screen.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer.



## Central alert



Lighting is associated with the display of another warning lamp:

- punctured wheel,
  - braking,
  - coolant temperature,
- stop the vehicle immediately and as safely as possible.  
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## Service



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a problem in one of the systems which does not have a specific warning lamp.

In order to identify it, consult the message on the multifunction screen.

The warning lamp only comes on temporarily in the case of the following minor faults:

- incorrect closing of the doors, boot, rear screen and bonnet,
- flat remote control battery,
- incorrect tyre pressure,
- the end of saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel).

In the case of major faults, the warning lamp remains on until the operating fault is rectified, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

## Braking



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the braking systems:

- significant drop in the level in the circuit,
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) fault (simultaneous lighting of the ABS warning lamp),

stop the vehicle immediately and as safely as possible.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

However, this does not prevent operation of the vehicle's assisted braking.

## Application/Release of the automatic electric parking brake



If this warning lamp comes on permanently, it is confirming that the parking brake is applied.

If it flashes, it is indicating an application or release fault. Contact a CITROËN dealer urgently (see section "Driving - § Electric parking brake").

## Automatic electric parking brake fault



This warning lamp comes on if there is a malfunction in the automatic electric parking brake.

## Deactivation of the automatic functions of the automatic electric parking brake



This comes on if the "automatic application" and "automatic release" functions when you switch off the engine are deactivated\* or faulty.

## Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR)



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

Unless the system has been deactivated, if this warning lamp and the indicator lamp on the button come on continuously, this indicates the occurrence of a fault in the ESP/ASR system or in the hill start assist system.

## Engine autodiagnosics system



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine management system.

If it flashes, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the emission control system.

\* According to country.



## Maximum coolant temperature



If this comes on, it indicates that the temperature in the cooling system is too high. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## Low fuel level



When the tank is full, all the bars are lit up.

If the fuel low warning lamp comes on accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, there are approximately 7 litres of fuel remaining in the tank and 2 or 3 bars flash in the instrument panel.

When the last bar goes out, there are approximately 2 litres of fuel remaining in the tank.

Top up with fuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

This warning lamp comes on each time the ignition is switched on, until sufficient fuel is added.

A control located on the panel to the left of the steering wheel allows you to open the fuel flap from inside the vehicle.

Do not continue driving until you run out of fuel as this may cause damage to the emissions control and fuel injection systems.

## Battery charge



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the battery charging circuit (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).

## Door open



A door, the boot or the rear screen is open:

- if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on continuously,
- if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on continuously, accompanied by an audible signal.

## Airbags



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems.

## Seat belt not fastened/unfastened



This warning lamp informs you if the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on model), and if the front passenger's (depending on model) or the second row passengers' seat belts are unfastened. The lit up positions represent those whose seat belts are not fastened/unfastened.

Depending on model, the front passenger seat may be fitted with a presence sensor; the corresponding warning lamp will only come on if the seat is occupied and the seat belt not fastened.

Driver's or front passenger's seat belt not fastened with presence sensor:

- the warning lamp lights up between 0 and approximately 12 mph (20 km/h). Above 12 mph (20 km/h), it flashes accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen and an audible signal for around 120 seconds.

Second row rear passengers' or front passenger's seat belt not fastened without presence sensor:

- when the ignition is switched on, the points corresponding to the seat positions with seat belts not fastened remain lit up for 30 seconds.

Seat belts unfastened during the journey:

- the point corresponding to the seat position with seat belt unfastened lights up between 0 and approximately 12 mph (20 km/h). Above 12 mph (20 km/h), it flashes accompanied by an audible signal for around 120 seconds. The audible signal stops when the ignition is switched off or if a door is opened.

## Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.

### More than 620 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

**Example:** 4 800 miles/km remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



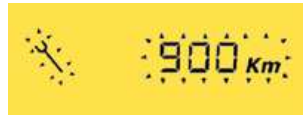
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner is switched off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The display then indicates the total and trip distances.



### Less than 620 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

**Examples:** 400 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



## Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

**Example:** the service is overdue by 300 miles/km.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains lit.**



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving habits.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

## Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a count-down,
- ☞ when the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

## Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver whether the engine oil level is correct or not.

This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

### Oil level correct

*oil ok*

### Oil level low

*oil*

This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL**", accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multi-function screen.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

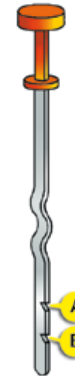
## Oil level gauge fault

*oil --*

This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL --**". Contact a CITROËN dealer.

### Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.



There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level,
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the type of oil suited to your engine.

## Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a count-down,
- ☞ when the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

## Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver whether the engine oil level is correct or not.

This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

### Oil level correct

*oil ok*

### Oil level low

*oil*

This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL**", accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multi-function screen.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

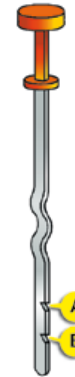
## Oil level gauge fault

*oil --*

This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL --**". Contact a CITROËN dealer.

### Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.



There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level,
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the type of oil suited to your engine.

## Total distance recorder

System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

## Trip distance recorder

System which measures a distance travelled during a day or other period since it was reset to zero by the driver.



- ☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

## Lighting rheostat

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.



## Activation

When the vehicle lighting is on:

- ☞ press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls,
- ☞ when the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it,

or

- ☞ when the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it,
- ☞ when the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

## Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

## MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN A

### Presentation



1. Time
2. Date and display zone
3. Ambient temperature

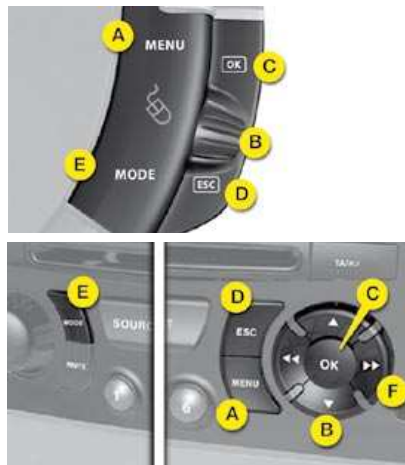
When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (ice risk).

The ambient temperature displayed may be greater than the actual temperature, if the vehicle is parked in bright sunlight.

The display of certain types of information is sometimes by scrolling and sometimes by alternation.

It is recommended that the driver should not manipulate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

### Controls



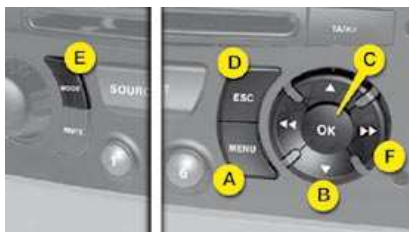
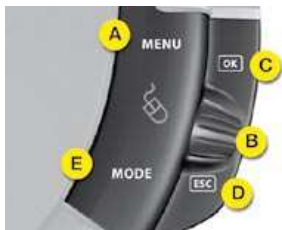
- A. Access to the "Main Menu"
- B. Scrolling in the screen menus
- C. Selection and confirmation in the menus of the function chosen or the value modified
- D. Cancellation of the operation or return to the previous display
- E. Selection of the type of information to be displayed in zone 2 (date, radio-CD and trip recorder)
- B or F. Within the menus, choice of activation/deactivation of functions and selection of adjustments

### Main Menu

By pressing on the button **A**, then using button **B**, you have access to the following functions:

- **Radio-CD** (see "Audio")
- **Vehicle configuration**, to activate/deactivate:
  - operation of the rear wiper,
  - automatic guide-me-home lighting,
  - electric parking brake automatic functions (application/release)\*,
  - door selectivity,
  - lighting of daytime running lamps (depending on country).
- **Options**, for display of alert messages
- **Display adjustments**, for adjusting the date and time on the screens
- **Languages**, for choosing the screen language
- **Units**, giving you access to the choice of units of temperature and units of fuel consumption

\* According to country



## Configuring the vehicle functions

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select the sub-menu for personalisation configuration of your vehicle, then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Select the function to be configured by pressing **B**.
- ☞ The system tells you whether the function status is active or inactive. Modify this status with a press on **F**.
- ☞ Validate with a press on **C**.

## Displaying the log of alerts

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select the submenu for options. Confirm with two presses on **C**.

You can cancel the start of the display by pressing button **E** to abandon and validating by pressing **C**.

Alerts signalled previously but not resolved, will scroll in the display for recall.

To clear the displaying of an alert, press **D**.

## Adjusting the date and the time

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select the submenu for display adjustments, then confirm by pressing **C**.
- ☞ Press **B** to select what you want to modify: year, month, day, hour, minutes, mode of display.
- ☞ Make your adjustment by pressing **F**. You can continue your adjustments by selecting a different element by presses on **B**. When you have finished your adjustments, press **C**.

## Choosing the language

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select the submenu for languages. Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ With presses on **F**, select the language of your choice, then validate with a press on **C**.

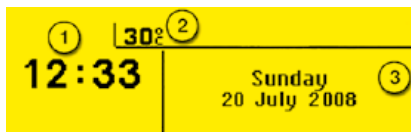
## Choosing the units

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Press **B** to select the sub-menu for Units. Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Press **B** to select the type of unit you wish to modify (Temperature or Fuel Consumption).
- ☞ With presses on **F**, select the unit of your choice, then validate with a press on **C**.

This choice concerns all the information (Consumption-Speed) appearing on the screens.

## MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN C

### Presentation



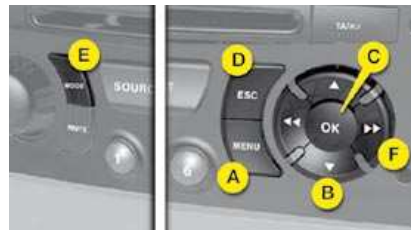
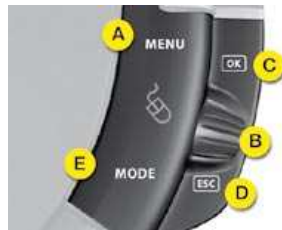
1. Time
2. Ambient temperature
3. Date and display zone

When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (risk of ice).

The ambient temperature displayed may be greater than the actual temperature, if the vehicle is parked in bright sunlight.

It is recommended that the driver should not manipulate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

### Controls



- A. Access to the "Main Menu"
- B. Scrolling in the screen menus
- C. Selection and confirmation in the menus of the function chosen or the value modified
- D. Cancellation of the operation or return to the previous display
- E. Selection of the type of information to be displayed permanently (date, radio-CD, trip computer) on the right of the screen

### Main Menu

Press on the button **A** to view the "Main Menu" of the multifunction screen. This menu gives you access to the following functions:



#### Radio-CD

(see "Audio and Telematics")



#### Bluetooth® hands-free kit

(see "Audio" and Telematics)



#### Trip computer

This permits:

- entering the distance to your destination,
- access to the log of alerts (recall of alerts signalled previously),
- access to the status of functions, such as the activation/deactivation of automatic headlamps, automatic windscreen wipers, ESP...





## Personalisation - Configuration

This permits activation/deactivation of certain functions which may be present or not depending on the trim level of your vehicle:

- operation of the rear wiper,
  - automatic guide-me-home lighting, directional headlamps,
  - electric parking brake automatic functions (application/release) (depending on destination country)
  - door selectivity,
  - lighting of daytime-running lamps (depending on country),
  - rear parking assistance,
- and setting of the:
- brightness intensity, time, date and units,
  - screen language.

## Activating/deactivating rear screen wipe when you engage reverse gear

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then select "Define vehicle parameters". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Using **B**, select "Parking assistance". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then by pressing **C**, select/deselect "Activation of rear wiper in reverse gear" to activate/deactivate this.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**" on the screen.

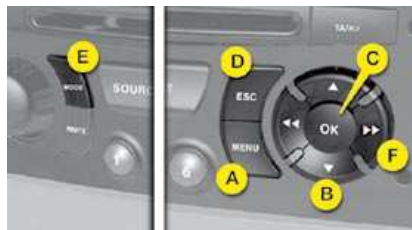
## Activating/deactivating automatic guide-me-home lighting

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then select "Define vehicle parameters". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.

- ☞ Using **B**, select "Lighting and signalling". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then by pressing **C**, select/deselect "Guide-me-home headlamps" to activate/deactivate this. After activation, choose its duration: press on **C**, then use **B** to select the duration and then press on **C**.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**" on the screen.

## Activating/deactivating Xenon dual-function directional headlamps

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then select "Define vehicle parameters". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Using **B**, select "Driving assistance". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then by pressing **C**, select/deselect "Directional headlamps" to activate/deactivate them.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**" on the screen.



## Activating/deactivating electric parking brake automatic functions (application/release)\*

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then select "Define vehicle parameters". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.

- ☞ Using **B**, select "Driving assistance". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then by pressing **C**, select/deselect "Automatic handbrake" to activate/deactivate the electric parking brake automatic functions (application/release).
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen.

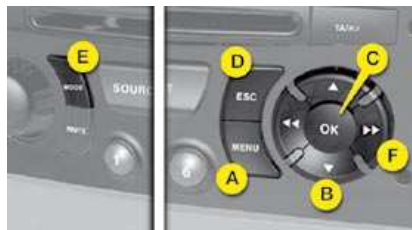
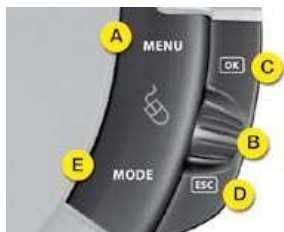
## Activating/deactivating door selectivity

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then select "Define vehicle parameters". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Using **B**, select "Access to the vehicle". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then by pressing **C**, select the level of vehicle access desired.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen.

## Adjusting the date and time

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Select "Display configuration" using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Select "Date and the time adjustment" using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Press **B** to select the values you wish to modify. Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Make your adjustments by pressing **B**, confirming each adjustment choice by pressing **C**.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen.

\* Depending on country.



## Choosing the units

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Select "Display configuration" using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Then select "Choice of units". Confirm your choice with a press on **C**.

- ☞ Using **B**, select the unit you wish to modify (Temperature or Fuel consumption), then confirm by pressing **C**.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen. This choice affects all the information (Fuel consumption - Speed) appearing on the screens.

## Choosing the language

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **B** to select "Personalisation-Configuration", then confirm your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Select "Choice of language" using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Using **B**, select the language and validate your choice with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"** on the screen.

## NAVIDRIVE MULTIFUNCTION COLOUR SCREEN

### Presentation



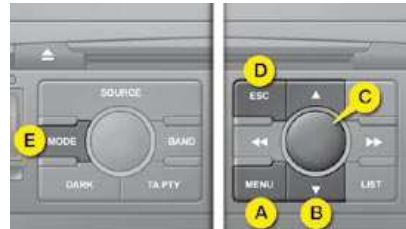
1. Ambient temperature
2. Directory
3. Date
4. Telephone
5. Time

When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (risk of ice).

The ambient temperature displayed may be greater than the actual temperature, if the vehicle is parked in bright sunlight.

It is recommended that the driver should not operate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

### Controls



- A. Access to the "Main Menu"
- B. Scrolling in the screen menus
- C. Selection and confirmation in the menus of the function chosen or the value modified
- D. Cancellation of the operation or return to the previous display
- E. Selection of the type of information to be displayed permanently (date, radio-CD, trip computer) on the right of the screen

### Main Menu

Press on the button **A** to view the "Main Menu" of the multifunction screen.

This menu gives you access to the following functions (see "NaviDrive Instructions"):



**Navigation/Guidance**



**Map**



**Traffic Information**



**Audio Functions**



**Telematics**



**Configuration,**  
for adjusting various parameters (date, time, units)



**Video**



**Vehicle Diagnostics**

## TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the trip travelled (range, fuel consumption...).

### Monochrome screen A



### Data displays



- ☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer data in succession.

### Zero reset



- ☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,
  - current fuel consumption,
  - distance travelled,
  - average fuel consumption,
  - average speed.
- ☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

## TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the route travelled (range, consumption, ...).

### Monochrome screen C



### NaviDrive colour screen



### Display of information



Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer information groups in succession:



- the current information group with:
  - range,
  - current consumption,
  - distance remaining to be travelled,



- the trip "1" group with:
  - distance travelled,
  - average consumption,
  - average speed, for the first trip.



- the trip "2" group with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.

### Trip zero reset



When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds.

The trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

Trip "1" permits, for example, daily calculations, and trip "2" monthly calculations.

## "Trip computer" menu

System which provides general information concerning the status of certain equipment with which your vehicle is equipped, such as the alert log, the status of the functions...

### Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession on the multifunction screen.

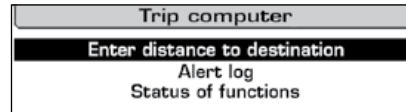
### Status of functions

This summarises the active or inactive status of systems present on the vehicle.

### Enter distance to destination

This enables you to enter an approximate value for the distance to the final destination.

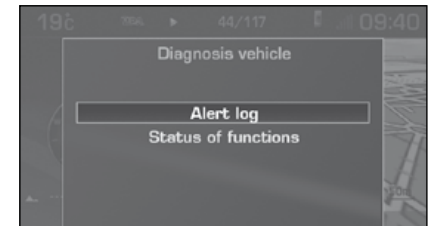
## Monochrome screen C



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the general menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.
- ☞ On the **"Trip computer"** menu, select one of the following applications:
  - "Alert log",
  - "Status of functions",
  - "Enter distance to destination".

## "Vehicle Diagnostics" menu

### NaviDrive colour screen



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the general menu.
- ☞ Turn the dial and press it to select the **"Vehicle Diagnostics"** menu.
- ☞ On the **"Vehicle Diagnostics"** menu, select one of the following applications:
  - "Alert log",
  - "Status of functions".

## A few definitions...

II



### Range

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This figure may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer.



### Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



### Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.



### Distance travelled

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.



### Average speed

(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).



### Distance remaining to destination

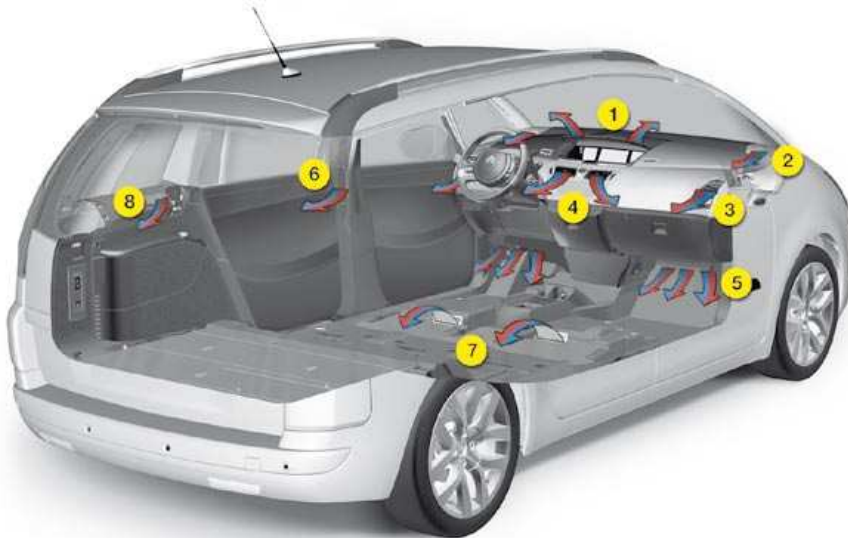
(km or miles)

This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is either calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated, or entered by the user.

If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.



## RECOMMENDED SETTINGS FOR THE VENTILATION, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING



### Air inlet

Check that the exterior grille for the air inlet, at the bottom of the windscreen, is clean and free of dead leaves, snow, etc.



### Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side windows demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Adjustable and closing side air vents.
4. Adjustable and closing central air vents.
5. Front occupant footwell air outlets.
6. Adjustable and closing 2nd row side air vents, with air flow and temperature adjustment.
7. Rear passenger footwell air outlets.
8. Adjustable and closing 3rd row side air vents.

The side air vents **8** apply only to the 7-seater versions.

## Air vents

The air vents to the face have grilles and thumbwheels to adjust the air flow and direction (up-down, right-left).

### III

## Air circulation

Air vents on the floor underneath the front seats provide enhanced heating for the rear seat positions; take care not to obstruct them.

## Dust filter/Odour filter (active carbon)

There is a filter for excluding odours and dust.

This filter has to be changed in accordance with the vehicle's servicing schedule (see "Maintenance and Warranty Guide").

## Air conditioning

To ensure that your system operates correctly, it is recommended to have it checked regularly.

Water arising from condensation in the air conditioning drains away through a hole provided for this purpose. A pool of water may thus form under the vehicle when stationary.

To keep the air conditioning compressor well sealed, it is essential to operate the air conditioning at least once in every month.

Regardless of the season, the air conditioning is useful, since it removes humidity and condensation.

To be effective, the air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.

If after a lengthy stop in bright sunlight the interior temperature is excessive, air the passenger compartment by opening the windows for a few moments, then close them again.

The air conditioning operates by using power from the engine. This results in a slight increase in fuel consumption.

## Sensors













The automatic regulation of the air conditioning, inside the cabin, uses a number of sensors (sunlight sensor, outside temperature sensor...) that relieve you of the need to make frequent adjustments outside the displayed temperature.

Be careful not to obstruct the sunlight sensor, located on the dashboard behind the instrument panel.

## RECOMMENDED INTERIOR SETTINGS

## - Heating/Manual air conditioning

To make the best use of the system, we recommend:

| Action To have       |  |   |  |  | A/C |  |
|----------------------|---|--|---|--|-----|---|
| Cold                 |   | <br>or<br> | Max. cold to start with, then personal adjustments                                | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      | ON  | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Hot                  |   | <br>or<br> | Max. hot to start with, then personal adjustments                                 | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      |     | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Demisting Defrosting |  |  | Max. hot  |  |     | OFF   |

## - Automatic air conditioning

With automatic air conditioning, you are recommended to choose **AUTO** operation.

## MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING

### A. DRIVER'S CONTROL PANEL



#### 1. Adjustment of the air blower speed

The air blower adjustment only operates when the engine is running. To adjust the air flow, press on button 1:



to increase the flow of air,



to decrease the flow of air.

The level of air flow is shown by the progressive lighting of the warning lamps depicting the ventilator blades 1.

By reducing the flow to minimum, you deactivate the air conditioning system (OFF).

To achieve an agreeable level of comfort in the passenger compartment, you should not leave this control too long in the OFF position.

#### 2. Adjustment of the air distribution

Press on button 2 to make the display scroll through the different types of air distribution.



The air distribution chosen is shown by the lighting of the corresponding warning lamps on the display 2.

#### 3. Mode of adjustment of temperature for the passenger

Press on button 3 to have independent passenger control of cabin air temperature. The warning lamp goes out.

While the passenger is adjusting temperature, the warning lamp lights up.

#### 4. Air recirculation

This control is for isolating disagreeable odours or fumes coming from outside.

Press on button 4, to exclude entry of outside air. The warning lamp lights up.

This should be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of cabin air and to prevent misting forming on the windows.

Press again on button 4, to deactivate air recirculation.

#### 5. Air conditioning

The air conditioning can only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (adjusting the flow of air) has to be activated in order for air conditioning to be obtained.

Press on button 5. The warning lamp lights up.

**To be effective**, the air conditioning should be operated **only** with the windows closed.

If your vehicle is not equipped with air conditioning, you will have the same control panel but without the **A/C** button.

## 6. Demisting/defrosting of the rear screen

This operates only if the engine is running.

- ☞ Press on button **6** to activate/deactivate the electric demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and the exterior rear view mirrors. The warning lamp lights up.



The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive consumption of power.

## 7. Rapid demisting/defrosting of front and rear windows and rear view mirrors

- ☞ Press on button **7**. The warning lamp lights up.

This function simultaneously activates:

- front demisting/defrosting,
- optimum flow of air,
- recirculation prohibition,
- demisting/defrosting of rear view mirrors and heated rear screen,
- air conditioning, if necessary.

To stop the function, press again on button **7**.

## 8. Adjustment of the air blower temperature

This control is for adjusting the temperature of the air in the passenger compartment. It can be used in cold weather as well as in hot weather, provided the air conditioning is active.

The adjustment of the temperature is continuous and progressive starting from left to right.

## B. PASSENGER'S CONTROL PANEL



### Adjustment of temperature











- ☞ Press on button **9** to take over control of the temperature. The warning lamp lights up.
- ☞ Rotate button **10** to adjust your temperature.

The adjustment of the temperature is continuous and progressive starting from left to right.

## RECOMMENDED INTERIOR SETTINGS

## - Heating/Manual air conditioning

To make the best use of the system, we recommend:

| Action To have       |  |   |  |  | A/C |  |
|----------------------|---|--|---|--|-----|---|
| Cold                 |   | <br>or<br> | Max. cold to start with, then personal adjustments                                | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      | ON  | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Hot                  |   | <br>or<br> | Max. hot to start with, then personal adjustments                                 | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      |     | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Demisting Defrosting |  |  | Max. hot  |  |     | OFF   |

## - Automatic air conditioning

With automatic air conditioning, you are recommended to choose **AUTO** operation.

## AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING

### A. DRIVER'S CONTROL PANEL



#### 1. Automatic comfort regulation

**AUTO** A press on this button, confirmed by the display of the A/C warning lamp and of **AUTO** on the screen, provides automatic control, at the temperature selected, of all the following 5 functions:

- air flow,
- cabin temperature, on left hand side and right hand side,
- air distribution,
- air conditioning,
- automatic air recirculation.

For this facility to operate, it is recommended to keep all the air vents open.

Using the **AUTO** mode will prevent the formation of mist inside the vehicle in cold or humid weather.

When starting from cold, in order to avoid a rush of cold air, the blower attains its optimum level progressively.

#### Manual resumption of one or more functions

It is possible to adjust each of the functions **3, 4, 6** and **10** manually. The display of the **"AUTO"** function will then go off.

#### Resumption by the driver of the adjustment of cabin temperatures (for the front and rear passengers)

**A long press on the "AUTO" button cancels all personal settings, including the passenger's temperature, and returns the system to automatic operation.**

#### 2. Adjustment of temperature

To display the desired temperature, press button:

- **-** to decrease the temperature,
- **+** to increase the temperature.

An adjustment around 21 will provide an agreeable temperature level. However, depending on your preference, anything between 18 and 24 is quite normal.

For optimum comfort, it is recommended to avoid an adjustment difference greater than 3 between right and left.

Actual temperatures experienced in the passenger compartment are dependent on external factors and for this reason might not be identical to those displayed.

On entering the vehicle, the inside temperature may be much colder (or hotter) than would be comfortable. It serves no purpose to alter the temperature displayed in an attempt to attain your preference more rapidly. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to make up the difference in temperature as soon as possible.



### 3. Adjustment of the air blower speed

The air blower operates only when the engine is running (except when the REST function is activated).

To adjust the flow of air, press on the button:



to increase the air flow,



to decrease the air flow (this button also has the REST function).

The level of air flow is indicated on the display by the progressive filling of the ventilator blades.

If you place the air blower on position **0**, the system is deactivated. The air blower display will be empty, with the indication OFF.



**Function for retaining ventilation with the engine switched off**

**The REST function is available when you switch on the ignition and when you stop the engine.**

This function allows you to retain ventilation in the passenger compartment for a few minutes, even with the engine stopped.

When you leave the vehicle, any passengers present can still have the benefit of air circulation, even though the engine is not running.

### Engine stopped, ignition switched on:

- The displays will light up, with the air blower shown empty as long as the function is available.
- A press on the REST button activates the function for a timing of just a few minutes. Two blades of the blower will fill to signify that the function is active.
- It can be deactivated and reactivated during the timed period.
- At the end of the timed period, the display will go off.

### On stopping the engine:

- The displays remain lit up, the blower is shown empty and the function can be activated for 30 seconds.
- A press on the REST button during the next 30 seconds activates the function for a timing of several minutes. The duration and availability of the function are variable according to the state of charge of the battery (a protection to guarantee engine starting). Two blower blades fill up to signify that the function is active. It remains active, even after the doors have been locked, until the end of the timing.
- A further press before the end of the timed period stops the function definitively.

This button does not activate the air conditioning, only the air blowers. In the REST function, the air flow and distribution are controlled automatically and you cannot modify them.

### 4. Adjustment of the air distribution



Press on button **4** so that the air flows scroll successively on the display.

The air distribution you have chosen is confirmed by the lighting of the corresponding warning lamps in the display.

There are 7 possible adjustments.



## 5. Air recirculation



This button activates the recirculation of air within the passenger compartment and also has an automatic function.

- Press on button **5** to close off the entry of air from outside and to activate recycling of the air in the cabin. the warning lamp comes on.

Whilst retaining the other adjustments, this position enables the driver at any time to exclude any disagreeable odours or fumes coming from outside the vehicle. It should be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of cabin air and to prevent misting.

- Press again on button **5** to allow entry of air from the outside. The warning lamp goes out.

The air recirculation can also be accessed by means of a press on the control, located on the lower left of the steering wheel (see "§ Fixed centred controls steering wheel").

## 6. Adjustment mode for the rear passengers



This button decides whether or not the rear passengers may use their adjustment controls.

There are three possible states for this button:



### Locking of the rear passenger controls

The driver imposes his adjustment on the rear passengers. In this case, the rear passenger controls are deactivated.



### Authorisation of the rear passenger controls

The rear passengers can use their adjustment controls at their convenience.



### Reduction of the air flow for the rear passengers

With additional air conditioning, in cold weather you are advised to close the supply of air to the rear passengers (no hot air distribution possible via these air vents).

## 7. Panel display mode: black panel function



This function turns the displays and panel backlighting on or off.

- Function activated, a press on any button will light up the screen temporarily.
- press on button **7** deactivates the function, lighting of buttons and screen is again permanent.

This function optimises notably the visual comfort for driving at night.

## 8. Demisting/defrosting of the rear screen

This can only operate when the engine is running.

- Press on button **8** to activate/deactivate the electric demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and, according to version, of the exterior rear view mirrors. The warning lamp lights up and the symbol appears on the display.



It switches off automatically to prevent excessive consumption of power.

## 9. Rapid demisting/defrosting of the front and rear windows

- Press on button **9**. The warning lamp lights up.



This function gives a rapid demisting/defrosting of the vehicle simultaneously with:

- front demisting/defrosting at optimum temperature,
- optimum air flow,
- recirculation prohibition,
- demisting/defrosting of the rear view mirrors and heated rear screen,
- air conditioning, if necessary.

Press again on button **9** or on **AUTO** to stop the function. Demisting/defrosting of the rear view mirrors and heated rear screen remains activated.

## 10. Air conditioning

- ☞ Press on button **10** to activate the air conditioning.

The **A/C** warning lamp lights up.

## B. PASSENGER CONTROL PANELS



### 11. Front passenger

The front passenger can adjust their temperature control independently at any time by pressing buttons + and -.



The front passenger controls the adjustment of their own temperature.



The temperature for the passenger is aligned with that for the driver.

### 12. Rear passengers (right/left)



By default, in **AUTO** position, the adjustment of the air flow is aligned on the front ventilation.











- ☞ Rotate the button to decrease or increase the air flow.

You can adjust the air flow only if this is enabled by the driver (see button **6** of the driver's control panel).

## RECOMMENDED INTERIOR SETTINGS

## - Heating/Manual air conditioning

To make the best use of the system, we recommend:

| Action To have       |  |   |  |  | A/C |  |
|----------------------|---|--|---|--|-----|---|
| Cold                 |   | <br>or<br> | Max. cold to start with, then personal adjustments                                | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      | ON  | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Hot                  |   | <br>or<br> | Max. hot to start with, then personal adjustments                                 | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      |     | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Demisting Defrosting |  |  | Max. hot  |  |     | OFF   |

## - Automatic air conditioning

With automatic air conditioning, you are recommended to choose **AUTO** operation.

## 5. Air recirculation



This button activates the recirculation of air within the passenger compartment and also has an automatic function.

- Press on button **5** to close off the entry of air from outside and to activate recycling of the air in the cabin. the warning lamp comes on.

Whilst retaining the other adjustments, this position enables the driver at any time to exclude any disagreeable odours or fumes coming from outside the vehicle. It should be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of cabin air and to prevent misting.

- Press again on button **5** to allow entry of air from the outside. The warning lamp goes out.

The air recirculation can also be accessed by means of a press on the control, located on the lower left of the steering wheel (see "§ Fixed centred controls steering wheel").

## 6. Adjustment mode for the rear passengers



This button decides whether or not the rear passengers may use their adjustment controls.

There are three possible states for this button:



### Locking of the rear passenger controls

The driver imposes his adjustment on the rear passengers. In this case, the rear passenger controls are deactivated.



### Authorisation of the rear passenger controls

The rear passengers can use their adjustment controls at their convenience.



### Reduction of the air flow for the rear passengers

With additional air conditioning, in cold weather you are advised to close the supply of air to the rear passengers (no hot air distribution possible via these air vents).

## 7. Panel display mode: black panel function



This function turns the displays and panel backlighting on or off.

- Function activated, a press on any button will light up the screen temporarily.
- press on button **7** deactivates the function, lighting of buttons and screen is again permanent.

This function optimises notably the visual comfort for driving at night.

## 8. Demisting/defrosting of the rear screen

This can only operate when the engine is running.

- Press on button **8** to activate/deactivate the electric demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and, according to version, of the exterior rear view mirrors. The warning lamp lights up and the symbol appears on the display.



It switches off automatically to prevent excessive consumption of power.

## 9. Rapid demisting/defrosting of the front and rear windows

- Press on button **9**. The warning lamp lights up.



This function gives a rapid demisting/defrosting of the vehicle simultaneously with:

- front demisting/defrosting at optimum temperature,
- optimum air flow,
- recirculation prohibition,
- demisting/defrosting of the rear view mirrors and heated rear screen,
- air conditioning, if necessary.

Press again on button **9** or on **AUTO** to stop the function. Demisting/defrosting of the rear view mirrors and heated rear screen remains activated.

## 10. Air conditioning

- ☞ Press on button **10** to activate the air conditioning.

The **A/C** warning lamp lights up.

## B. PASSENGER CONTROL PANELS



### 11. Front passenger

The front passenger can adjust their temperature control independently at any time by pressing buttons + and -.



The front passenger controls the adjustment of their own temperature.



The temperature for the passenger is aligned with that for the driver.

## 12. Rear passengers (right/left)



By default, in **AUTO** position, the adjustment of the air flow is aligned on the front ventilation.











- ☞ Rotate the button to decrease or increase the air flow.

You can adjust the air flow only if this is enabled by the driver (see button **6** of the driver's control panel).

## RECOMMENDED INTERIOR SETTINGS

## - Heating/Manual air conditioning

To make the best use of the system, we recommend:

| Action To have       |  |   |  |  | A/C |  |
|----------------------|---|--|---|--|-----|---|
| Cold                 |   | <br>or<br> | Max. cold to start with, then personal adjustments                                | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      | ON  | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Hot                  |   | <br>or<br> | Max. hot to start with, then personal adjustments                                 | Max. to start with, then personal adjustments                                      |     | ON to start with, then OFF  |
| Demisting Defrosting |  |  | Max. hot  |  |     | OFF   |

## - Automatic air conditioning

With automatic air conditioning, you are recommended to choose **AUTO** operation.

## ADDITIONAL AIR CONDITIONING



Additional air conditioning allows you to optimise comfort levels in warm weather conditions. It produces additional fresh air which is supplied using the rear air vents. The supply of warm air via the rear air vents is not possible using this system.

## C. REAR PASSENGER CONTROL PANELS (RIGHT/LEFT)

### 13. Adjustment of temperature

The rear passengers can adjust their temperature controls independently via buttons + and -.

Their preference cannot be greater than that of the driver by more than 2. The reaching of this maximum preference is confirmed by the flashing of its display.

### 14. Adjustment of air blower speed

The air blower operates only when the engine is running.

To adjust the flow of air, press on button:



to increase the air flow,



to decrease the air flow.

The level of air flow is indicated on the display by the progressive filling of the ventilator blades.

By reducing the flow to minimum, you deactivate the air conditioning system (OFF).

You can adjust the temperature and the air flow only if the driver enables you to (see button 6 of the driver's control panel).



This warning lamp signifies that **the passenger controls are locked**, you can adjust neither the temperature nor the air flow, which remain aligned on the preferences of the driver.



This warning lamp indicates that the **supply of air is cut off**.

This position is recommended in cold weather conditions, as the air vents do not supply warm air.



## SCENTED AIR FRESHENER

The scented air freshener releases a fragrance into the passenger compartment via the central air vents.

The air freshener contains an empty cartridge when your vehicle is delivered. You therefore need to insert a cartridge in order to use the air freshener.

### Adjustment of flow

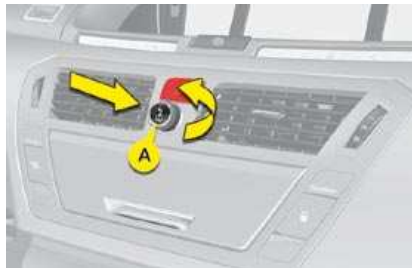


- ☞ Rotate the button **A** to adjust (to the left to reduce, to the right to increase) or stop (maximum to the left) the flow of scented air.

The central air vents have to be open.

A cartridge lasts on average 3 months, based on one hour's usage per day.

## To remove the air freshener



- ☞ Press the button **A**, rotating it a quarter turn to the left as far as it will go.
- ☞ Remove the air freshener from the dashboard.
- ☞ Replace the cartridge (see § "Changing the cartridge").

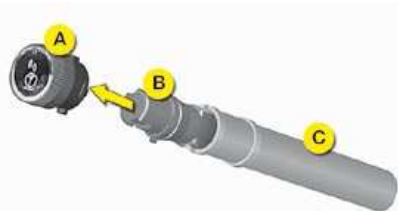
## To insert the air freshener



- After fitting or changing a cartridge:
- ☞ Place the air freshener back in its housing.
  - ☞ Rotate it a quarter turn to the right.



## Replacing a cartridge

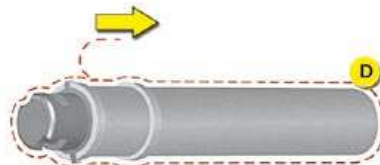


The recharge for the air freshener consists of a cartridge **B** and its sealed container **C**.

- ☞ Remove the protective film **D**.
- ☞ Place the head of the cartridge **B** on the button **A** of the air freshener.
- ☞ Rotate it a quarter turn to lock it on the button and remove the container.
- ☞ Insert the air freshener into its housing.

You can change cartridges at any time, keeping the used cartridges in their original containers.

## Air freshener button



The air freshener button **A** is independent of the cartridge. Cartridges are supplied without the air freshener button **A**.

The button of the air freshener **A** can only be fixed into the central dashboard with a cartridge attached.

Therefore always keep the air freshener button **A** and one cartridge.

Recharges are available, depending on country, either on the Internet site or from a CITROËN dealer.

Stowage points are provided in the glovebox for storing of cartridges and containers.

For safety, use only cartridges that are provided for this purpose.

Retain the containers for the storage of used cartridges.

Do not attempt to take cartridges apart.

Never recharge the cartridges with fragrances not supplied by CITROËN.

Keep them out of reach of children and animals.

Avoid all contact with the skin and with the eyes.

In the event of swallowing, consult a doctor and show him the product packaging or label.

Do not install or remove a cartridge while you are driving.

## FRONT SEATS



## MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS

**1. Forwards-backwards adjustment**

Raise the control bar, then slide the seat to the position desired.

**2. Lumbar support**

Rotate the control until you attain the position desired.

**3. Seat height adjustment**

Raise or lower the control the number of times necessary to obtain the position desired.

**4. Backrest angle**

Action the control and adjust the angle of the backrest.

It is possible to incline the backrest 45° rearwards by tilting it until it locks; to unlock it, lift the control.

**5. Armrest**

To adjust the position of the armrest, pull it up and then fully down, and then raise it to the desired position.

**6. Head restraint**

To raise it, pull it upwards. To lower it, press on the control as well as on the head restraint.

The adjustment is correct when the top of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

It can also be adjusted for tilt (depending on version).

To remove it, press on the unlocking button and pull it upwards.

To adjust the head restraint forwards/backwards, move the base of the head restraint to obtain the position desired.

Never drive without the head restraints fitted. They must be in place and adjusted correctly.

## FRONT SEATS ELECTRIC ADJUSTMENTS



### 1. Adjustment of the seat height and angle, forwards-backwards



Raise or lower the front of control 1 to raise or lower the front of the seat base (on driver's seat).



Raise or lower the rear of control 1 to raise or lower the seat.



Action control 1 forwards or rearwards to slide the seat forwards/backwards.

### 2. Adjustment of backrest angle and lumbar support



Push the top of control 2 forwards or rearwards to adjust the backrest angle.



Raise or lower control 2 to increase or decrease the lumbar support.

The seats can also be adjusted electrically for a short period:

- on opening one of the front doors,
- after switching off the ignition.

### Heated seats control



With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- ☞ Use the corresponding adjustment wheel, placed on the inner side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

**0:** Off.

**1:** Low.

**2:** Medium.

**3:** High.

## Storing driving positions

System which takes into account the electrical settings of the driver's seat and exterior mirrors. It enables you to store up to two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



## Storing a position

### Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the exterior mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal is heard indicating that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Do not try to store a driving position while driving.

## Recalling a stored position

### Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

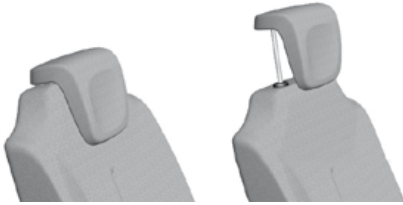
### Vehicle moving

- ☞ Press and hold button **1** or **2** until the audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.



## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

III



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

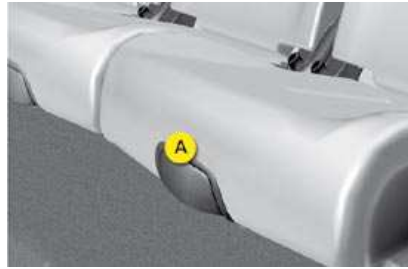
To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in the centreline of the seat back.

Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

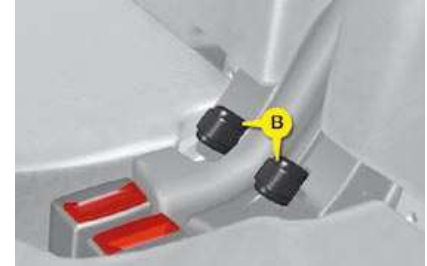
## SECOND ROW SEATS

### Forwards-backwards adjustment



Lift the control **A**, located at the front of the seat, then adjust the seat into the position desired.

### "Comfort" position



The 3 second-row seats are independent of each other and all the same width. They all can have a "comfort" position.

#### Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

- ☞ Pull on the control **B** and guide the seat rearwards.

The backrest reclines and the seat base pivots slightly.

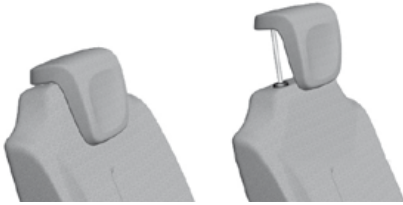
#### Returning the seat to the initial position

- ☞ Pull on the control **B** and allow the seat to come forwards.

**Always supervise any movements of seats by children.**

## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

III



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

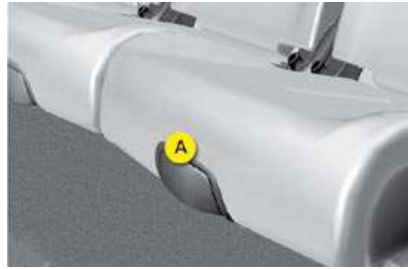
To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in the centreline of the seat back.

Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

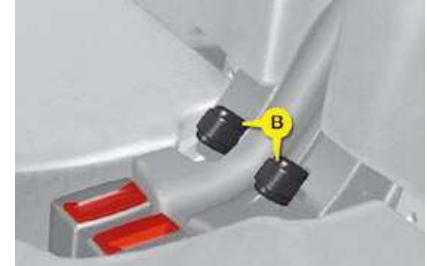
## SECOND ROW SEATS

### Forwards-backwards adjustment



Lift the control **A**, located at the front of the seat, then adjust the seat into the position desired.

### "Comfort" position



The 3 second-row seats are independent of each other and all the same width. They all can have a "comfort" position.

#### Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

- ☞ Pull on the control **B** and guide the seat rearwards.

The backrest reclines and the seat base pivots slightly.

#### Returning the seat to the initial position

- ☞ Pull on the control **B** and allow the seat to come forwards.

**Always supervise any movements of seats by children.**

## SECOND ROW SEATS (C4 PICASSO)

### Folding the seat



Each seat can be folded onto the floor to enable you to modify your vehicle's interior space.

- ☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the red arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.
- ☞ Push the backrest slightly forwards so that the backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The assembly then lowers onto the floor.

### Repositioning seat

- ☞ Raise the backrests and push them rearwards so that they lock in position.

**Always supervise any movements of seats by children.**

### Panels behind the second row seats



Panels below the second row seats provide the bottom of the boot space with rigidity. They automatically follow the seat movements (e.g. forwards-backwards adjustment, folding).

A storage area is available underneath the panels.

## SECOND ROW SEATS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Each seat can be folded onto the floor to form a flat surface, thus enabling you to modify your vehicle's interior space.



### Folding the seat

#### From the outside

- ☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the red arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.
- ☞ Push the backrest slightly forwards, so that the backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The assembly will then lower onto the floor.

#### From the boot (when loading, for example)

You can fold the second-row seat(s) from the boot, having first folded the third-row seats.

- ☞ Pull on the strap **D** to unlock the chosen seat, push the backrest gently forwards.

To prevent any damage to the mechanism, the strap **D** unclips under excessive force. Simply reclip it to render the system operational.

#### Repositioning the seat

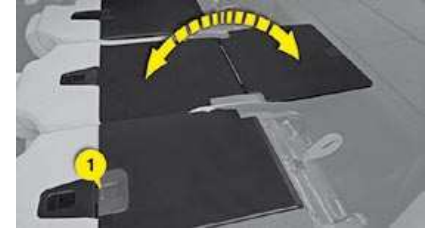
- ☞ Return the second-row seat bases to their initial position and lock them in that position.
- ☞ Raise the backrests and push them rearwards so that they lock in position.

Before moving the third-row seats, return the second-row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.

Emergency exit: should the first system fail (strap **C**), the strap **D** can be used by third-row passengers to facilitate their exit.

**Always supervise any movements of seats by children.**

#### Rigid panel



Each second-row seat backrest has a rigid panel attached.

This panel enables you:

- to have a continuous load surface in the boot, whatever the positions of the seats,
- to avoid having objects sliding under the second-row seats.

#### Unlocking/Locking the rigid panel

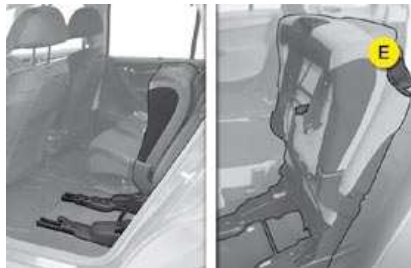
- ☞ Slide the latch **1** on the plate downwards, to unlock.
- ☞ Return the panel to the upright position, then slide the latch **1** upwards, to lock.

Before deploying the rigid panels, check that the second-row seats are in the fully back position.

5-seater configurations do not have these rigid panels.



## "Cinema seat" position



This position allows you to free up space between the first row and the second row.

Pull the control **E** under the seat.

This position is only possible with the outer seats.

## Access to the third row seats



The third-row seats can be accessed via the outer second-row seats.

- ☞ Pull the control **E**. The seat unlocks and the seat base comes up against the backrest.

- ☞ Hold the control **E** in the raised position, pushing forwards. The whole seat slides towards the front seat.

Space becomes free behind the seat, the third-row passengers can get to their seats.

## Exit from the third row seats

- ☞ Hold the control **E** in the raised position. The seat unlocks and the seat base comes up against the backrest.

- ☞ Push the seat backrest, still holding the control **E** in the raised position.

If the table on the back of the first-row seat is down, close it to enable this operation.



## Repositioning the seat, from the outside, with the door open

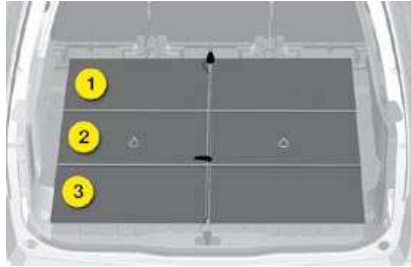
If there are passengers seated in the third row:

- ☞ manually return the assembly as far as possible rearwards; the seat does not return as far as the maximum rearwards position so as to retain leg space for the third-row passengers,

- ☞ fold the seat base.

## THIRD ROW SEATS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

### Concertina boards



Two rigid concertina boards, which cannot be separated from the vehicle, cover the 2 third-row seats, when these are in the folded position.

### Folding the concertina boards

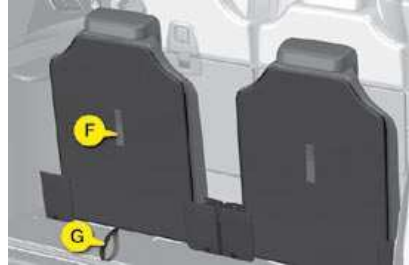
Pull on the control, the 3 sections of the board will fold like a concertina.

When the third-row seats are upright, these concertina boards can be left either:

- flat behind the seats,
- in the vertical position,

thereby leaving a storage area available.

### Unfolding the seat



- ☞ Return the second-row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.
- ☞ Having folded your concertina board, pull on the control **F** located behind the seat backrest. The backrest pivots rearwards, pulling the seat base with it. The seat locks in the open position.

### Repositioning the seat

- ☞ Return the second-row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.
- ☞ Lower the head restraints.
- ☞ Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.

- ☞ Pull on the control **G**, located at the bottom of the seat backrest. The seat unlocks.
- ☞ Next push the backrest gently forwards. The backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The seat base then folds into the stowage area provided for that purpose.
- ☞ Reposition the concertina boards over the folded seats.

Before moving the third-row seats, return the rigid plates of the second-row seats to the upright position and lock them.

Do not try to fold a third-row seat that has not first had the backrest fully locked in place.

Do not leave objects either on or underneath the seat bases of the third-row seats when you are folding them.

Do not leave your hand on the control **G** as you fold the seats, as you risk trapping your fingers.

## SEAT MODULARITY AND VARIOUS CONFIGURATIONS

### Examples of seat configurations C4 Picasso



**5 seats**



**3 seats**



**4 seats**

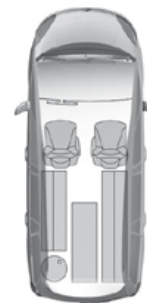


**Maximum loadspace**

### Examples of seat configurations Grand C4 Picasso



**7 seats**



**Maximum loadspace**



**6 seats**



**5 seats**



**4 seats**



For easy modification of your interior vehicle space, all the rear seats can be individually folded: onto the second-row floor, and under the third-row floor (in the case of the Grand C4 Picasso). You can then have a load floor that is continuous up to the front seat backrests.

## MIRRORS

### Exterior mirrors

Each mirror is adjustable to provide the rear view needed for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.



### Adjustment

With the ignition on:

- ☞ move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror,
- ☞ move control **B** in one of four directions to adjust,
- ☞ return control **A** to the central position.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

The demisting/defrosting of the exterior mirrors is linked to that of the rear screen.

### Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

### Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the exterior mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer.

### Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

### Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

### Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

### Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

## Interior mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

### Manual model

The mirror is fitted with a night-time anti-dazzle device.



### Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

### Day/night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

As a safety precaution, the mirrors must be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

## Automatic day/night model

System which automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.



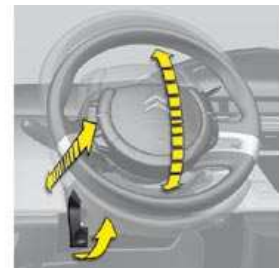
In order to prevent dazzle, the interior mirror glass darkens automatically in relation to the intensity of the light from the rear.

It lightens when the light (light beam of following vehicles, sun...) decreases, so guaranteeing optimum visibility.

In order to guarantee optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted to adapt the driving position to the size of the driver.



### Adjustment

- ☞ First, adjust the driver's seat to the most suitable position.
- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control to unlock the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach.
- ☞ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

After locking, if you press firmly on the steering wheel, a slight click may be heard.

As a safety precaution, it is imperative that these operations are carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

## REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or remotely. It is also used to locate the vehicle, activate the guide-me-home lighting and start the engine, as well as providing protection against theft.

IV



### Unlocking the vehicle

#### Unfolding the key

- ☞ First press button **A** to unfold the key.

#### Complete unlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

#### Complete unlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time.

This also triggers the timed switching on of the welcome lighting, courtesy lamps and exterior side spotlamps for approximately thirty seconds.

#### Selective unlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.
- ☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

It also triggers the timed switching on of the welcome lighting, the courtesy lights and the exterior side spotlamps for approximately thirty seconds.



The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

Selective unlocking is not available using the key.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

- ☞ Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and the glass panoramic roof blind automatically in addition to locking.

### Normal locking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.

It also triggers the timed switching on of the exterior side spotlamps and the guide-me-home lighting, if this is activated.

If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

To permit the transportation of bulky objects, the vehicle can be locked from the inside, using the centralised control on the dashboard, even if the tailgate or rear screen is open.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will relock automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

When closing the windows and/or glass panoramic roof shutter using the remote control, you must ensure that no one prevents them from closing correctly.

The folding and unfolding of the exterior mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer.

## Deadlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and the glass panoramic roof blind automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

### Deadlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.

This also triggers the timed switching on of the exterior side spotlamps and guide-me-home lighting, if this is activated.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

### Folding the key



- ☞ First press button **A** to fold the key.

### Locating your vehicle

- ☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park. This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and exterior side spotlamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

### Guide-me-home lighting

A press on button **B** operates the guide-me-home lighting (lighting of the sidelamps, dipped beams, number plate lamps and exterior side spotlamps (located underneath the exterior rear view mirrors)).

A second press before the end of the timing cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

### Anti-theft protection

#### Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

#### SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and

a message on the multifunction screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.



## STARTING



### 1. "S": Steering lock

To unlock the steering, gently move the steering wheel while turning the key, without forcing it.

### 2. "M": Drive position

Depending on the version of your vehicle, the orange and red warning lamps should also come on for a short time.

### 3. "D": Starter

Release the key as soon the engine has started.

If the first attempt fails, switch off the ignition. Wait ten seconds then operate the starter again.

## Steering lock

1. "S": After removing the key, turn the steering wheel to lock the steering. The key can only be removed in position **S**.
2. "M": Ignition switched on, the steering is unlocked (by turning the key to position **M**, move the steering wheel gently if necessary).
3. "D": Starter position.

Never turn the key to this position when the engine is running.

**Do not run the engine in an enclosed space or where there is insufficient ventilation.**

**It is essential always to keep the engine running in order to retain braking and steering power assistance.**

**Never remove the ignition key before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**

## Key left in position "M" buzzer

If you forget to remove the key from the ignition, the ignition is switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **S** then back to position **M**.

## STOPPING

### Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

Flicking the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition could cause serious damage.

A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.

## Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

## Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

## Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR0523/3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from CITROËN dealers.

### SERVICE

If the remote control battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing together.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

### Lost keys

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration document and your personal identification documents.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

### Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

### Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

### Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

### When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

### Deadlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.

This also triggers the timed switching on of the exterior side spotlamps and guide-me-home lighting, if this is activated.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

### Folding the key



- ☞ First press button **A** to fold the key.

### Locating your vehicle

- ☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park. This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and exterior side spotlamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

### Guide-me-home lighting

A press on button **B** operates the guide-me-home lighting (lighting of the sidelamps, dipped beams, number plate lamps and exterior side spotlamps (located underneath the exterior rear view mirrors)).

A second press before the end of the timing cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

### Anti-theft protection

#### Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

#### SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and

a message on the multifunction screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

### Lost keys

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration document and your personal identification documents.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

### Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

### Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

### Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

### When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

## STARTING



### 1. "S": Steering lock

To unlock the steering, gently move the steering wheel while turning the key, without forcing it.

### 2. "M": Drive position

Depending on the version of your vehicle, the orange and red warning lamps should also come on for a short time.

### 3. "D": Starter

Release the key as soon the engine has started.

If the first attempt fails, switch off the ignition. Wait ten seconds then operate the starter again.

## Steering lock

1. "S": After removing the key, turn the steering wheel to lock the steering. The key can only be removed in position **S**.
2. "M": Ignition switched on, the steering is unlocked (by turning the key to position **M**, move the steering wheel gently if necessary).
3. "D": Starter position.

Never turn the key to this position when the engine is running.

**Do not run the engine in an enclosed space or where there is insufficient ventilation.**

**It is essential always to keep the engine running in order to retain braking and steering power assistance.**

**Never remove the ignition key before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**

## Key left in position "M" buzzer

If you forget to remove the key from the ignition, the ignition is switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **S** then back to position **M**.

## STOPPING

### Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

Flicking the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition could cause serious damage.

A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.

## Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

## Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

## Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR0523/3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from CITROËN dealers.

### SERVICE

If the remote control battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing together.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

## ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against the theft of your vehicle. It provides two types of protection, exterior and interior, as well as an anti-tamper function.

### Exterior perimeter protection

The system detects opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to enter the vehicle by forcing a door, the boot or the bonnet.

### Interior volumetric protection

The system detects any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or moves inside the vehicle.

If you wish to leave a pet in the vehicle or a window partially open, deactivate the interior volumetric protection.

### Anti-tamper function

The system detects the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to put the wires of the siren, the central control or the battery out of service.

Do not make any modifications to the alarm system, this could cause malfunctions.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm



### Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The alarm is activated; the indicator lamp on button **A** flashes once per second.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm is deactivated; the indicator lamp on button **A** switches off.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior protection alarm only

### Deactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press button **A** until the indicator lamp is lit continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The exterior protection alarm alone remains activated; the indicator lamp on button **A** flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

### Reactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.
- ☞ Relock the vehicle using the remote control.

The alarm is activated again with both types of protection; the indicator lamp on button **A** switches off.



**Triggering**

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for approximately thirty seconds.

After it has been triggered, the alarm is again operational.

If the alarm is triggered ten times in succession, the eleventh time will result in it becoming inactive.

If the indicator lamp on button **A** flashes rapidly, this indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

To avoid triggering the alarm when washing your vehicle, lock it using the key in the driver's door lock.

Do not activate the alarm before disconnecting the battery, otherwise the siren will sound.

**Failure of the remote control**

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

**Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm**

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

**Malfunction**

When the ignition is switched on, lighting of the indicator lamp on button **A** for ten seconds indicates a siren fault.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

**Automatic operation\***

Depending on the legislation in force in your country, one of these cases may occur:

- 45 seconds after the vehicle is locked using the remote control, the alarm is activated, regardless of the status of the doors and boot.
- 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the alarm is activated.
  - ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

\* According to country.

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS

System intended to open or close a window manually or automatically. Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a system for deactivation in the event of misuse of the rear controls.



1. Driver's electric window control.
2. Passenger's electric window control.
3. Rear right electric window control.
4. Rear left electric window control.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.

## One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.
- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control pad, carry out the operation from the control pad of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

## Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.**

## Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.**

## Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.



This warning lamp comes on temporarily on the instrument panel on deactivation and each time the ignition is switched on.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the section "Child safety - § Electric child lock").

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

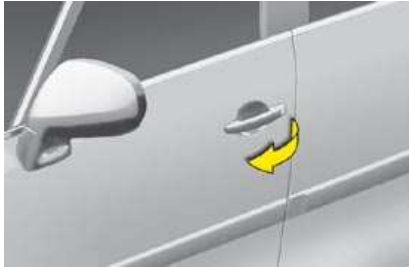
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

## DOORS

### Opening

#### From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

#### From inside



- ☞ Pull on the front door control to open the door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.
- ☞ Pull on the rear door control to open the door; this unlocks the door concerned only.

With the selective unlocking activated:

- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only.
- the other door controls unlock the other doors and the boot.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

### Manual centralised control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.



### Locking

- ☞ Press button **A** to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp on the button comes on.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

If the boot or the rear screen is open, the central locking from the inside is active for the doors, to permit the transportation of long objects.

## Unlocking

- ☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.

If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.

- ☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic centralised control

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors, boot and rear screen while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

## Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors, the boot and the rear screen lock automatically.

If one of the doors or the boot or rear screen is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



## Unlocking

- ☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors, the boot and the rear screen temporarily.

## Activation

- ☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the multifunction screen.

## Deactivation

- ☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the multifunction screen.

## Emergency control

System which locks or unlocks the doors mechanically in the event of a malfunction of the battery or of the central locking.

### Locking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the right.

### Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the left.

### Locking the front and rear passenger doors



- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, located on the edge of the door, then turn it **one eighth of a turn**.

### Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

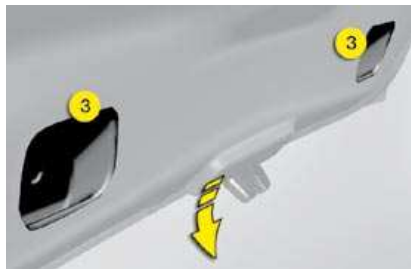
## BOOT

### Opening



After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, with the rear screen closed, pull on the handle **1** and raise the tailgate.

### Closing



Lower the tailgate using one of the two handholds **3**, located on the interior boot trim.

Past the balancing point, allow the tailgate to lower and close itself (do not assist it or slow it down).

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

## REAR SCREEN

### Opening



This opening gives easy access to the boot, even if you are parked close to a wall or another vehicle.

When the rear screen is open, you can access the boot by raising the rear shelf using its tab (C4 Picasso).

After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, with the boot closed, press the control **2** and raise the rear screen using the base **4** of the wiper arm.

The boot and the rear screen cannot both be open at the same time.

### Closing

Lower the rear screen guiding it with the wiper arm until it is closed.

If the rear screen is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

## Emergency tailgate release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.



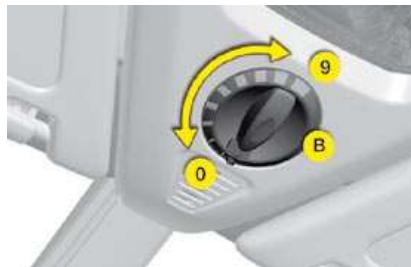
### Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

## PANORAMIC GLASS ROOF

System which consists of a panoramic tinted glass surface to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

Fitted with an electric blind in several sections to improve thermal and aural comfort.



### Opening the roof blind

- ☞ Rotate the control **B** to slide the roof blind to the position desired (positions **1** to **9**).

## Closing the roof blind

- ☞ Rotate the control **B** to position **0** to close the roof blind.

### Recommendations

- Pressing the locking button on the remote control for more than two seconds will close the blind (practical when, for example, you leave your vehicle on a sunlit car park).
- On returning to your vehicle, a press on the button **B** repositions the blind to the last position selected.

## Anti-pinch

The blind has an anti-pinch function.

At the end of its travel, when the blind encounters an obstacle on closing, it stops and moves back slightly.

Following a fault or after a battery disconnection during the movement of the blind or after it has stopped, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

- ☞ place the blind in the closed position,
- ☞ press button **B** for approximately two seconds.

## Emergency tailgate release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.



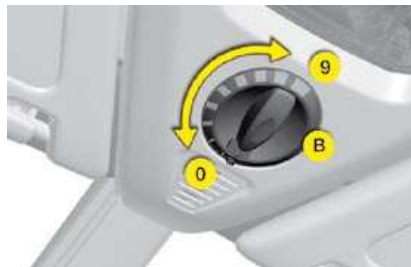
### Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

## PANORAMIC GLASS ROOF

System which consists of a panoramic tinted glass surface to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

Fitted with an electric blind in several sections to improve thermal and aural comfort.



### Opening the roof blind

- ☞ Rotate the control **B** to slide the roof blind to the position desired (positions **1** to **9**).

## Closing the roof blind

- ☞ Rotate the control **B** to position **0** to close the roof blind.

### Recommendations

- Pressing the locking button on the remote control for more than two seconds will close the blind (practical when, for example, you leave your vehicle on a sunlit car park).
- On returning to your vehicle, a press on the button **B** repositions the blind to the last position selected.

## Anti-pinch

The blind has an anti-pinch function.

At the end of its travel, when the blind encounters an obstacle on closing, it stops and moves back slightly.

Following a fault or after a battery disconnection during the movement of the blind or after it has stopped, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

- ☞ place the blind in the closed position,
- ☞ press button **B** for approximately two seconds.



## FUEL TANK

**Capacity of the tank:** approximately 60 litres.

### Low fuel level



When the minimum level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen.

When it first comes on, around 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

### Refuelling



Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be taken into account by the fuel gauge.



Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

- ☞ Press on the control **A**, situated on the control panel on the left hand side. The fuel flap automatically opens up.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that corresponds to the correct fuel type for your vehicle.
- ☞ Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap **B**.
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Maintain this position throughout the refuelling operation.
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

**If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the third cut-off; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.**

The petrol or diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**For petrol engines, unleaded fuel is obligatory.**

The filler neck is narrower, permitting unleaded petrol only.

### Fuel cut-off switch

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

After switching off the ignition, the control **A** is active for only a few minutes. If necessary, switch on the ignition again to reactivate it.

**If you have put in fuel that is wrong for your vehicle, it is essential to have the tank drained before you start the engine.**



### **Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines**

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15376.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (type E100).



### **Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines**

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel circuit).

## LIGHTING CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

### Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering.

### Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

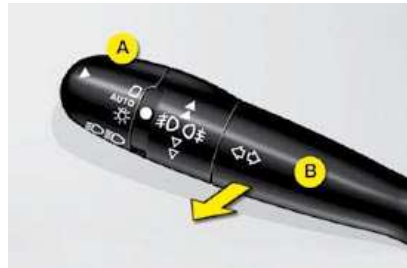
- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

## Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic lighting,
- directional lighting.

## Manual controls



The lighting commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

**A.** Main lighting mode selection ring, with:



lamps off,



automatic lighting,



sidelamps only,



dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

**B.** Stalk for switching headlamps by pulling: dipped headlamps/main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

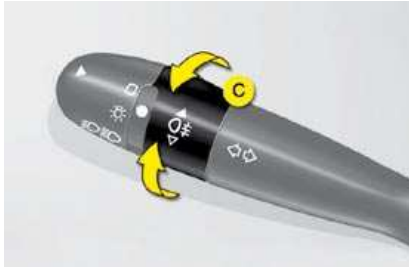
## Displays

Lighting of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms the selective switching on of the lighting selected.

## C. Foglamps selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the sidelamps and the dipped and main beam headlamps.

### Model with rear foglamp only



- 1st turn forwards: rear foglamp on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamp off.

### Model with front and rear foglamps



- 1st turn forwards: front foglamps on.
- 2nd turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.
- 2nd turn rearwards: front foglamps off.

In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

V

### Lighting on buzzer

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if guide-home lighting is activated.

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the "0" position, lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

## Daytime-running lamps\*

System which switches on the vehicle's dipped headlamps automatically on starting.

This safety system makes the vehicle more visible to other road users during the day.

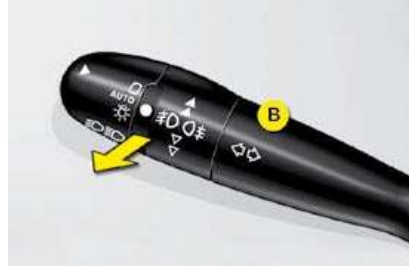
The lighting of the instruments and controls (instrument panel, multi-function screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) is independent of this function. It is provided by the automatic lighting mode or when the lamps are switched on manually.

In countries in which it is imposed by regulations:

- by default, this function is activated,
- the sidelamps and the number plate lamps are also switched on.

## Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary lighting of dipped headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk **B**.
- ☞ A second "headlamp flash" switches the function off again.

### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

The manual guide-me-home lighting is also available by pressing the lighting button on the remote control (refer to the section "Access - § Remote control key").

## Automatic lighting

The sidelamps and dipped headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



### Activation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to the "AUTO" position. The automatic lighting is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than "AUTO". Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

\* According to country.

## Linking with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration to 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu (in the case of the monochrome screen A, the duration is fixed),
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

## Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the brightness sensor, the lamps come on, a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In fog or snow, the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the brightness sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

## EXTERIOR SIDE SPOTLAMPS



These illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

## Switching on

The side spotlamps come on:

- when you unlock the vehicle or press on the lighting button on the remote control,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

## Switching off

They are timed to go out automatically.

## MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF THE HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle. To do this, turn the control, located below the fascia to the left of the driver, to the appropriate position:

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
  - 3 people.
1. 4 to 7 people.
- Intermediate setting.
2. 4 to 7 people + maximum authorised loads.
  - Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position "0".

## AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF THE DIRECTIONAL HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

### SERVICE

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

## Operating fault



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the system is inactive.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

On vehicles fitted with daytime running lights, the function is activated if the lighting stalk is in the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps" position. In position "0", the function is not activated.

## Daytime-running lamps\*

System which switches on the vehicle's dipped headlamps automatically on starting.

This safety system makes the vehicle more visible to other road users during the day.

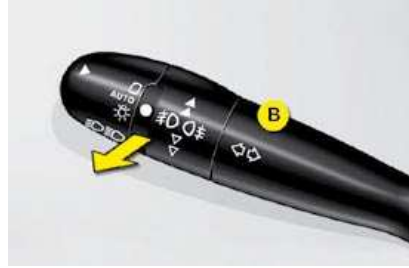
The lighting of the instruments and controls (instrument panel, multi-function screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) is independent of this function. It is provided by the automatic lighting mode or when the lamps are switched on manually.

In countries in which it is imposed by regulations:

- by default, this function is activated,
- the sidelamps and the number plate lamps are also switched on.

## Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary lighting of dipped headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk **B**.
- ☞ A second "headlamp flash" switches the function off again.

### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

The manual guide-me-home lighting is also available by pressing the lighting button on the remote control (refer to the section "Access - § Remote control key").

## Automatic lighting

The sidelamps and dipped headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



### Activation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to the "AUTO" position. The automatic lighting is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than "AUTO". Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.



## Linking with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration to 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu (in the case of the monochrome screen A, the duration is fixed),
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

## Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the brightness sensor, the lamps come on, a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In fog or snow, the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the brightness sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

## EXTERIOR SIDE SPOTLAMPS



These illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

## Switching on

The side spotlamps come on:

- when you unlock the vehicle or press on the lighting button on the remote control,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

## Switching off

They are timed to go out automatically.

## MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF THE HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle. To do this, turn the control, located below the fascia to the left of the driver, to the appropriate position:

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
  - 3 people.
1. 4 to 7 people.
- Intermediate setting.
2. 4 to 7 people + maximum authorised loads.
  - Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position "0".

## Linking with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration to 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu (in the case of the monochrome screen A, the duration is fixed),
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

## Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the brightness sensor, the lamps come on, a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In fog or snow, the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the brightness sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

## EXTERIOR SIDE SPOTLAMPS



These illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

## Switching on

The side spotlamps come on:

- when you unlock the vehicle or press on the lighting button on the remote control,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

## Switching off

They are timed to go out automatically.

## MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF THE HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle. To do this, turn the control, located below the fascia to the left of the driver, to the appropriate position:

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
  - 3 people.
1. 4 to 7 people.
- Intermediate setting.
2. 4 to 7 people + maximum authorised loads.
  - Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position "0".

## AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF THE DIRECTIONAL HEADLAMPS



## DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

## Operating fault



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

### SERVICE

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Consult a CITROËN dealer.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the system is inactive.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

On vehicles fitted with daytime running lights, the function is activated if the lighting stalk is in the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps" position. In position "0", the function is not activated.

## AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF THE DIRECTIONAL HEADLAMPS



V

In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

### SERVICE

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

## Operating fault



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the system is inactive.

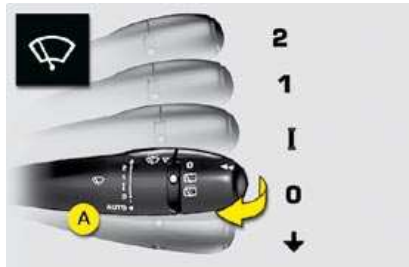
The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

On vehicles fitted with daytime running lights, the function is activated if the lighting stalk is in the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps" position. In position "0", the function is not activated.

## WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.



## Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic wiping for the wind-screen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

## Manual controls

The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

## Windscreen wipers

A. wiping speed selection stalk:

- 2** fast (heavy rain),
  - 1** normal (moderate rain),
  - I** intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle),
  - 0** park,
  - ↓** single wipe (press downwards),
- or

**AUTO ↓** automatic, then single wipe (see next page).

## Rear wiper



B. rear wiper selection ring:



park,



intermittent wipe,



wash-wipe (set duration).

If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

V

## Windscreen and headlamp wash

Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

If the dipped headlamps are on, the headlamp washers operate at the same time.

## Automatic windscreen wiping

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the interior mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

### Activation



This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing stalk **A** to the "AUTO" position.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

### Switching off



This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** upwards and returning it to position "0".

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing stalk **A** downwards.

### Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the brightness sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror.

Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

## Special position of the windscreen wipers



In the minute following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers in the centre of the windscreen.

This action enables you to position the wiper blades for winter parking, cleaning or replacement.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.

For optimum and lasting wiping of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- change them approximately every 6 months,
- avoid using them to retain card-board on the windscreen.

## COURTESY LAMPS

Selection and control of the various passenger compartment lamps.



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps

### Front courtesy lamp



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door or the boot is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

### Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

### Glass panoramic roof courtesy lamps

These courtesy lamps have two operating modes:

- automatic lighting when a door is opened or when the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position,
- permanent lighting.

Opening the boot switches on the third row courtesy lamp and the boot lamps.

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

V

## Windscreen and headlamp wash

Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

If the dipped headlamps are on, the headlamp washers operate at the same time.

## Automatic windscreen wiping

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the interior mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

### Activation



This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing stalk **A** to the "AUTO" position.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

### Switching off



This is controlled manually by the driver by moving stalk **A** upwards and returning it to position "0".

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing stalk **A** downwards.

### Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the brightness sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror.

Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.



## Special position of the windscreen wipers



In the minute following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers in the centre of the windscreen.

This action enables you to position the wiper blades for winter parking, cleaning or replacement.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.

For optimum and lasting wiping of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- change them approximately every 6 months,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen.

## COURTESY LAMPS

Selection and control of the various passenger compartment lamps.



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps

### Front courtesy lamp



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door or the boot is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

### Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

### Glass panoramic roof courtesy lamps

These courtesy lamps have two operating modes:

- automatic lighting when a door is opened or when the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position,
- permanent lighting.

Opening the boot switches on the third row courtesy lamp and the boot lamps.

## AMBIANCE LIGHTING PACK

### Ambiance lighting

System providing warm and convivial lighting which casts a gentle orange-tinted light.

This lighting is available at night or in conditions of poor daylight.



You can adjust the lighting by pressing on the control **A**.

This activates the light sources which are located as follows:

- on the sides of the front and rear doors,
- on the front and rear interior door handles,
- on the dashboard,
- at the roof.

### Operation

The control **A**:

- activates/deactivates the ambiance lighting,
- selects the lighting intensity.

The adjustment is memorised.

To **increase** the lighting intensity:

- ☞ Press a few times on the right of the control **A** to obtain your brightness preference.

To **decrease** the lighting intensity:

- ☞ Press a few times on the left of the control **A** to obtain your brightness preference.

### Courtesy lighting

The automatic courtesy lighting consists of the footwell lamps, the interior lamps and the ambiance light sources.

### Front door pockets with automatic lighting

The lighting for the door pockets comes on automatically when you place a hand inside one of the compartments.

It goes off after a few seconds when you take your hand away.

### Reading lamps on front seat backrests



There are spotlamps incorporated in the backrests of the front seats, behind the rear tables. They are only accessible when the table is lowered.

- ☞ Press the "On/Off" button to switch the reading lamp on or off.

## SLIDING SUN VISOR

### Sliding blinds



Sliding blinds are provided for your protection against bright sunlight. They can be adjusted manually.

- ☞ Slide the blind on the visor to the desired position by pushing the area **A**.

### Visor rails

The blinds are extended on the sun visor rails.

Fold the visor downwards, to protect against dazzle to the face.

If dazzle is coming from the side windows, detach the visor from its housing above the centre of the windscreen and pivot it to the side.

The visors are fitted with a locking system on their central housing when the blind is rolled up. To remove the visor from its central housing or reposition it, it must be in a vertical position.

Do not attach or suspend heavy objects on the slide rail of the sun blind.

## TOLL CARD/CAR PARK TICKET WINDOWS

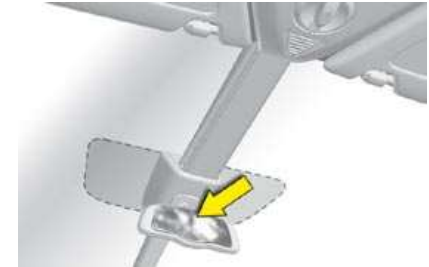
Facility for affixing toll cards and/or car park tickets.

These windows are located on each side of the base of the child monitoring mirror.

They are two non-reflective areas of the athermic windscreen.

The athermic windscreen limits heating of the passenger compartment by reducing the effects of the sun's rays (ultra-violet). It consists of a reflective layer, which also blocks certain radio-electric signals (toll card payments, etc.).

## CHILD MONITORING MIRROR



A child monitoring mirror is installed above the interior rear view mirror. This allows you to monitor the vehicle's rear passengers, or it can facilitate conversation between the front and rear passengers without the need to move the rear view mirror.

It can be folded away to eliminate dazzle.

## UPPER STORAGE AREA



VI

There are large storage compartments at the top of the dashboard, one on the driver's side and one on the passenger's side.

- ☞ To open, press the button at the bottom corner.
- ☞ To close, lower the lid fully until it clicks.

## ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX



This has areas for storing a bottle of water, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a can, fragrance cartridges...

- ☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle and lower the lid.

The lamp comes on automatically when the lid is opened.

## REFRIGERATED GLOVEBOX



It may be refrigerated, depending on your vehicle's equipment, by a ventilation duct that can be closed off manually.

It is directly linked to the vehicle's air conditioning system, being supplied with fresh air whatever the requirements of the passenger compartment.

The refrigeration of your glovebox only operates when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.



For reasons of safety, the upper storage compartments should be kept closed when the vehicle is moving.



For reasons of safety, the glovebox should remain closed when the vehicle is moving.

## REFRIGERATED STORAGE



Vehicles with an **electronic gearbox** or an **automatic gearbox** possess an additional refrigerated storage compartment, situated at the centre of the dashboard.

☞ To open, pull the handle and lower the lid.

The refrigerated storage has automatic lighting.

It can accommodate for example a 1.5 litre bottle and two 0.5 litre bottles.

Two cup-holders are available when the lid is open.

The refrigerated storage has a ventilation duct. It is directly linked to the vehicle's air conditioning system, and is supplied with fresh air whatever the requirements of the passenger compartment.

The refrigeration of this storage area only operates when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.



For reasons of safety, the refrigerated storage compartment should be kept closed when the vehicle is moving.

## CENTRE CONSOLE

The centre console contains:

- two cup-holders,
  - two storage compartments,
  - either a 12 V accessories socket (Maximum power: 120 W); this is operational when the ignition is on.
- There may be an additional 12 V accessories socket in the boot,
- or a USB port.

## SMOKER'S KIT



This kit consists of a lighter and a removable ashtray.

These are located on the centre console. The removable ashtray can be stored in a can holder.

☞ To use the lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.

## MATS

Removable component which protects the carpet against exterior dirt.



### Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

### Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; it is imperative that these are used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## USB BOX

This connection box, consisting of a JACK socket and a USB port, is located on the centre console.

It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® or USB stick type.

It reads the audio file formats which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering wheel controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For further details concerning the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

## DOOR POCKETS

### Front door

The front door pockets can hold objects equivalent in volume to a 1.5 litre bottle.

They may have their own lighting, coming on automatically when your hand approaches.

This lighting goes out automatically after a few moments when your hand is taken away.

### Rear door

The rear door pockets can hold objects equivalent in volume to a 0.5 litre bottle.

## AIRCRAFT-STYLE REAR TABLES



Rear table stowed



Rear table opened

The backrests of the front seats are fitted with aircraft-style tables. These incorporate a can-holder **A** and a retaining strap **B**, for the placing of objects.

- ☞ Pull the table downwards to open.
- ☞ To restow the table, raise it until the latch locks.

For safety reasons, these collapse downwards if excessive pressure is exerted.

## Individual reading lamps

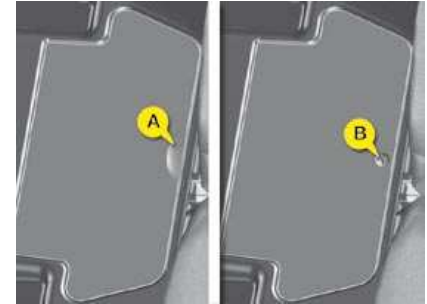


Reading lamps **C** may be incorporated in the front seat backrests, behind the tables. These light the surface of the tables without disturbing the other passengers.

They are accessible only while the table is down.

- ☞ Press on the "on/off" button to turn the lamp on or off.

## STORAGE UNDER THE SECOND ROW FOOTWELL



Depending on the configuration, the vehicle has one or two storage compartments under the footwell, located between the seats of the first and second rows. They can be accessed via clipped flaps with a handle **A**.

The compartment on the left-hand side may contain the temporary puncture repair kit and the tool kit may be stored in the compartment on the right-hand side. In this case the flap is secured by means of a screw **B**. To gain access to the compartment, turn the screw a quarter turn anticlockwise using a coin.

On vehicles fitted with pneumatic suspension, the left-hand flap is locked.

## THIRD ROW STORAGE

Third-row passengers may have storage pockets in the side panel and each of them will have a cup-holder (7 seater model).

## SIDE BLINDS (C4 PICASSO)

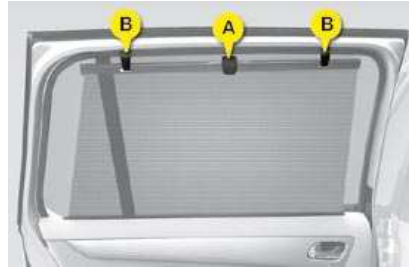
Fitted on the 2nd row rear windows, these protect young children from the sun's rays.



- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

## SIDE BLINDS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Fitted on the 2nd and 3rd row rear windows, these protect young children from the sun's rays.



### Second row

- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hooks **B**.

### Third-row

The blinds are incorporated in the third-row trim panels.

- ☞ Pull on the tab and anchor the blind on the hooks.

## REAR BLIND (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

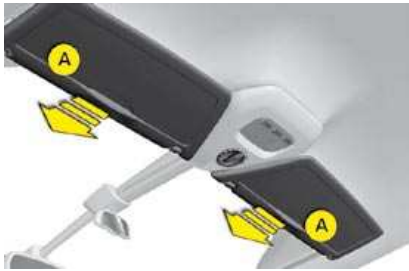
- ☞ Pull on the tab and anchor the blind on the hooks.

Do not attach or suspend heavy objects in the environs of the sun visors (blind housings and hooks...).



## SLIDING SUN VISOR

### Sliding blinds



Sliding blinds are provided for your protection against bright sunlight. They can be adjusted manually.

- ☞ Slide the blind on the visor to the desired position by pushing the area **A**.

### Visor rails

The blinds are extended on the sun visor rails.

Fold the visor downwards, to protect against dazzle to the face.

If dazzle is coming from the side windows, detach the visor from its housing above the centre of the windscreen and pivot it to the side.

The visors are fitted with a locking system on their central housing when the blind is rolled up. To remove the visor from its central housing or reposition it, it must be in a vertical position.

Do not attach or suspend heavy objects on the slide rail of the sun blind.

## TOLL CARD/CAR PARK TICKET WINDOWS

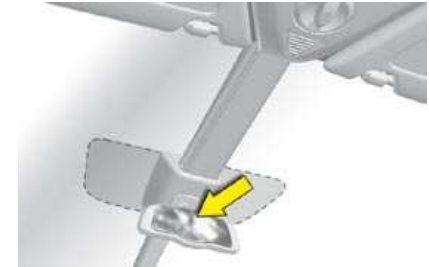
Facility for affixing toll cards and/or car park tickets.

These windows are located on each side of the base of the child monitoring mirror.

They are two non-reflective areas of the athermic windscreen.

The athermic windscreen limits heating of the passenger compartment by reducing the effects of the sun's rays (ultra-violet). It consists of a reflective layer, which also blocks certain radio-electric signals (toll card payments, etc.).

## CHILD MONITORING MIRROR



A child monitoring mirror is installed above the interior rear view mirror. This allows you to monitor the vehicle's rear passengers, or it can facilitate conversation between the front and rear passengers without the need to move the rear view mirror.

It can be folded away to eliminate dazzle.

## UPPER STORAGE AREA



VI

There are large storage compartments at the top of the dashboard, one on the driver's side and one on the passenger's side.

- ☞ To open, press the button at the bottom corner.
- ☞ To close, lower the lid fully until it clicks.

## ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX



This has areas for storing a bottle of water, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a can, fragrance cartridges...

- ☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle and lower the lid.

The lamp comes on automatically when the lid is opened.

## REFRIGERATED GLOVEBOX



It may be refrigerated, depending on your vehicle's equipment, by a ventilation duct that can be closed off manually.

It is directly linked to the vehicle's air conditioning system, being supplied with fresh air whatever the requirements of the passenger compartment.

The refrigeration of your glovebox only operates when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.



For reasons of safety, the upper storage compartments should be kept closed when the vehicle is moving.



For reasons of safety, the glovebox should remain closed when the vehicle is moving.

## REFRIGERATED STORAGE



Vehicles with an **electronic gearbox** or an **automatic gearbox** possess an additional refrigerated storage compartment, situated at the centre of the dashboard.

☞ To open, pull the handle and lower the lid.

The refrigerated storage has automatic lighting.

It can accommodate for example a 1.5 litre bottle and two 0.5 litre bottles.

Two cup-holders are available when the lid is open.

The refrigerated storage has a ventilation duct. It is directly linked to the vehicle's air conditioning system, and is supplied with fresh air whatever the requirements of the passenger compartment.

The refrigeration of this storage area only operates when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.



For reasons of safety, the refrigerated storage compartment should be kept closed when the vehicle is moving.

## CENTRE CONSOLE

The centre console contains:

- two cup-holders,
  - two storage compartments,
  - either a 12 V accessories socket (Maximum power: 120 W); this is operational when the ignition is on.
- There may be an additional 12 V accessories socket in the boot,
- or a USB port.

## SMOKER'S KIT



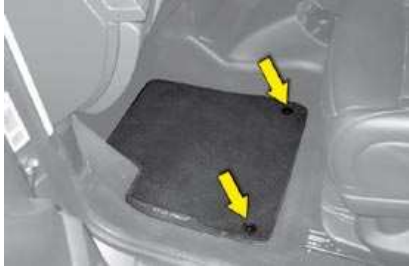
This kit consists of a lighter and a removable ashtray.

These are located on the centre console. The removable ashtray can be stored in a can holder.

☞ To use the lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.

## MATS

Removable component which protects the carpet against exterior dirt.



### Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

### Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; it is imperative that these are used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## USB BOX

This connection box, consisting of a JACK socket and a USB port, is located on the centre console.

It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® or USB stick type.

It reads the audio file formats which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering wheel controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For further details concerning the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

## DOOR POCKETS

### Front door

The front door pockets can hold objects equivalent in volume to a 1.5 litre bottle.

They may have their own lighting, coming on automatically when your hand approaches.

This lighting goes out automatically after a few moments when your hand is taken away.

### Rear door

The rear door pockets can hold objects equivalent in volume to a 0.5 litre bottle.

## AIRCRAFT-STYLE REAR TABLES



Rear table stowed



Rear table opened

The backrests of the front seats are fitted with aircraft-style tables. These incorporate a can-holder **A** and a retaining strap **B**, for the placing of objects.

- ☞ Pull the table downwards to open.
- ☞ To restow the table, raise it until the latch locks.

For safety reasons, these collapse downwards if excessive pressure is exerted.

## Individual reading lamps

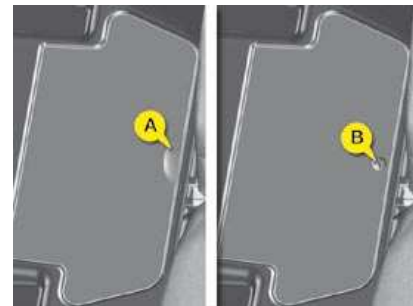


Reading lamps **C** may be incorporated in the front seat backrests, behind the tables. These light the surface of the tables without disturbing the other passengers.

They are accessible only while the table is down.

- ☞ Press on the "on/off" button to turn the lamp on or off.

## STORAGE UNDER THE SECOND ROW FOOTWELL



Depending on the configuration, the vehicle has one or two storage compartments under the footwell, located between the seats of the first and second rows. They can be accessed via clipped flaps with a handle **A**.

The compartment on the left-hand side may contain the temporary puncture repair kit and the tool kit may be stored in the compartment on the right-hand side. In this case the flap is secured by means of a screw **B**. To gain access to the compartment, turn the screw a quarter turn anticlockwise using a coin.

On vehicles fitted with pneumatic suspension, the left-hand flap is locked.

## THIRD ROW STORAGE

Third-row passengers may have storage pockets in the side panel and each of them will have a cup-holder (7 seater model).

## SIDE BLINDS (C4 PICASSO)

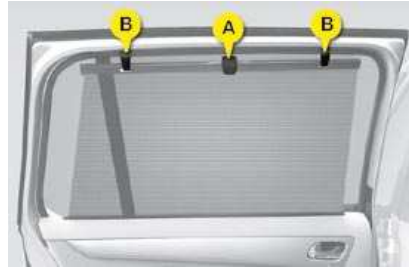
Fitted on the 2nd row rear windows, these protect young children from the sun's rays.



- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

## SIDE BLINDS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Fitted on the 2nd and 3rd row rear windows, these protect young children from the sun's rays.



### Second row

- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hooks **B**.

### Third-row

The blinds are incorporated in the third-row trim panels.

- ☞ Pull on the tab and anchor the blind on the hooks.

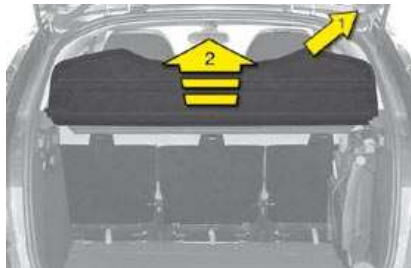
## REAR BLIND (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

- ☞ Pull on the tab and anchor the blind on the hooks.

Do not attach or suspend heavy objects in the environs of the sun visors (blind housings and hooks...).

## LUGGAGE COVER (C4 PICASSO)

This is in two parts.



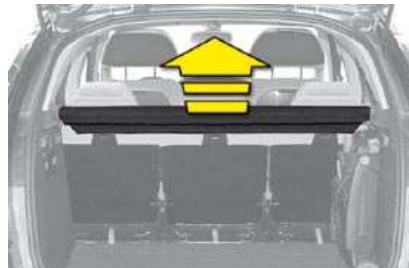
### Rear shelf

#### Removal

- ☞ Unhook the cords.
- ☞ Push upwards, then lift on each side of the luggage cover.

#### Fitting

- ☞ Move the luggage cover to its slots and push firmly down.
- ☞ So that the luggage cover will rise with the tailgate, take the cords and attach them on the tailgate.



### Front shelf

#### Removal

- ☞ First remove the rear shelf.
- ☞ Push upwards, then lift on each side.

#### Refitting

- ☞ Direct the flap downwards.
- ☞ Offer the luggage cover to its mountings and push firmly down.

## MODUBOX (C4 PICASSO)

Equipment for use both inside the vehicle and away from the vehicle. It is composed of a shopping trolley and a flexible bag (isotherm on some versions) which can be used independently of each other depending on your needs (by detaching the fastenings on each side at the top and bottom).



### To use

- ☞ Unhook the red strap to free the Modubox.
- ☞ Unhook the black strap then press on the round buttons on either side of the Modubox simultaneously to deploy it.

## Use of the Modubox outside the vehicle



- ☞ Press on the recess on the left hand side of the Modubox to raise (or lower) the handle.

## Stowage inside the vehicle

- ☞ Perform the operations in reverse to fold and stow inside the vehicle.
- ☞ If you have used your Modubox away from the vehicle, take care to reposition it correctly in the housings provided for this purpose.

## BAG HOOK

Located on the left-hand interior wall of the boot, this permits the securing of shopping bags.

## LUGGAGE COVER BLIND (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

### Position 1

5-seat configuration; installed behind the second-row seats, with the third-row seats folded away.



### Installing the roller

- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the blind roller in notch **A**.
- ☞ Compress the right-hand end of the roller and place it in notch **B**.
- ☞ Unroll the blind until it reaches the boot pillars.
- ☞ Insert the guides of the blind into the rails on the pillars.

### Removing the roller

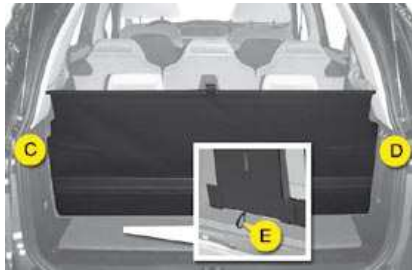
- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.



The roller has a moving flap to avoid interference with the second-row passengers when the seats are in the "reclined" position.

## Position 2

7-seat configuration; installed behind the third-row seats when these are folded away. This position conceals objects stowed in the boot from outside view.



### Installing the roller

- ☞ Roll up the blind, then remove the roller from its initial position.
- ☞ Position the roller, with the blind pull bar uppermost, flap downward.
- ☞ Fold the concertina boards.

- ☞ Engage the lug on the left of the roller in notch **C**.
- ☞ Pass the right-hand side above the third-row armrest.
- ☞ Engage the lug in notch **D**.
- ☞ Pull the seat belt(s) so that they will deploy without locking.
- ☞ Unroll the blind and engage the guides into the rails on the pillars.
- ☞ Lock the seat(s) in position.

### Removing the roller

- ☞ Push the flap towards the seat backrest.
- ☞ Lift the concertina board by grabbing it at the side, then position it vertically.
- ☞ Unlock the seat by pulling the strap **E**.
- ☞ Push the backrest towards the front.
- ☞ Proceed in reverse order to installing.

The blind can only be stored when the seats are folded away. You can position the concertina board vertically to lodge a bulkier object in the boot well.

## Position 3

7-seat configuration; stowed behind the third row seats when these are folded away.



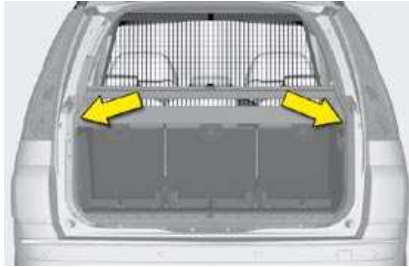
### Installing the roller

- ☞ Fold the concertina boards.
- ☞ Position the roller, with the blind pull bar uppermost, flap downward.
- ☞ Engage the lug on the left of the roller in notch **C**.
- ☞ Pass the right-hand side above the third-row armrest.
- ☞ Engage the lug in notch **D**.

### Removing the roller

- ☞ Proceed in reverse order to installing.

## HIGH CARGO NET (GRAND C4 PICASSO)



VI

This enables you to maximise the vehicle's loadspace.

It retains objects, preventing them from sliding towards the front of the passenger compartment.

**You insert it under the roller of the luggage-cover blind, securing it on the third-row side mouldings.**

### Position 1

5-seat configuration; installed behind the second row.

#### Installing the roller

- ☞ Remove the protective covers located under the blind roller notches.
- ☞ Position the roller under that of the luggage-cover blind.
- ☞ Raise the flap on the blind, positioning it on top of the blind.
- ☞ Deploy the net, passing it between the rollers and the seats.
- ☞ Pull the net upwards.
- ☞ Anchor it to the roof by means of the fixing points (after you have removed their covers).

#### Removing the roller

- ☞ Perform these operations in reverse order.

### Position 2

2-seat configuration; installed behind the first row.

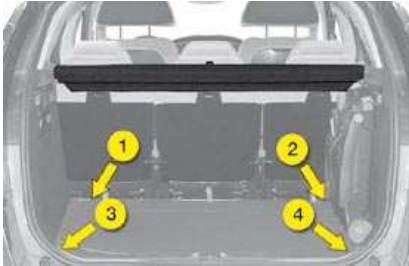
#### Installing the roller

- ☞ With the second-row seats folded away, remove the covers of the Isofix anchoring points located on the seat backrests.
- ☞ Secure the roller on the Isofix anchoring points.
- ☞ Deploy the net and pull it upwards.
- ☞ Anchor it to the roof by means of the fixing points (after you have removed their covers).

#### Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

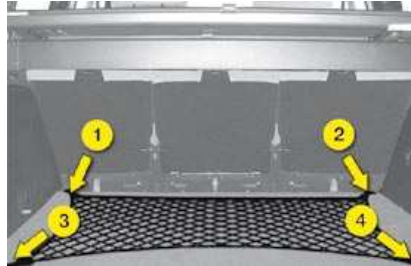
## LUGGAGE ANCHORING RINGS (C4 PICASSO)



There are 4 anchoring rings in the boot to enable you to secure your luggage:

- **1, 2, 3 and 4** on the boot floor.

## LUGGAGE ANCHORING RINGS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)



There are 4 anchoring rings in the boot to enable you to secure your luggage:

- **1, 2, 3 and 4** on the boot floor.

## LUGGAGE RETAINING NET (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Attached to the luggage anchoring rings, it allows objects to be held on the boot floor.

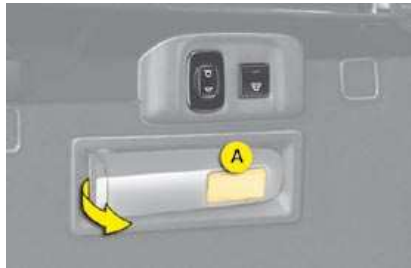
For reasons of safety in the event of sudden braking, it is recommended that you place heavy objects on the floor as close as possible to the backrests of the second-row seats.

## TORCH

This is a removable lamp, incorporated in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.



Grand C4 Picasso



C4 Picasso

## Boot lighting

The boot lamp **A** comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

Various lighting durations are available:

- ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- engine running, no limit.

## Operation of the torch

This torch operates with NiMH rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and recharges while you are driving.

Observe the polarities when fitting the batteries.

Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.

For replacement of the batteries, see the "Practical information - § Changing a bulb" section.

## Using the torch



- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards, as indicated by the arrow.
- ☞ Press the switch **B**, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support **C**, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

## Storing the torch

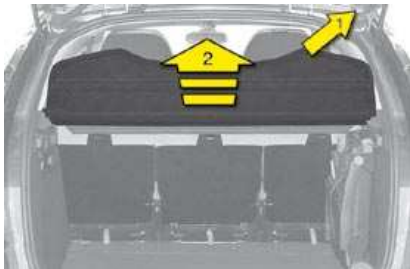
- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.

If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

## LUGGAGE COVER (C4 PICASSO)

This is in two parts.



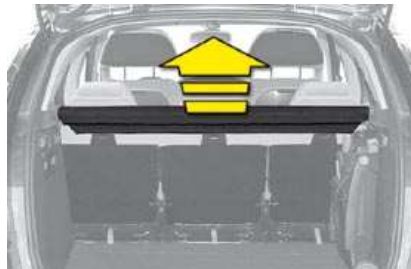
### Rear shelf

#### Removal

- ☞ Unhook the cords.
- ☞ Push upwards, then lift on each side of the luggage cover.

#### Fitting

- ☞ Move the luggage cover to its slots and push firmly down.
- ☞ So that the luggage cover will rise with the tailgate, take the cords and attach them on the tailgate.



### Front shelf

#### Removal

- ☞ First remove the rear shelf.
- ☞ Push upwards, then lift on each side.

#### Refitting

- ☞ Direct the flap downwards.
- ☞ Offer the luggage cover to its mountings and push firmly down.

## MODUBOX (C4 PICASSO)

Equipment for use both inside the vehicle and away from the vehicle. It is composed of a shopping trolley and a flexible bag (isotherm on some versions) which can be used independently of each other depending on your needs (by detaching the fastenings on each side at the top and bottom).



VI

### To use

- ☞ Unhook the red strap to free the Modubox.
- ☞ Unhook the black strap then press on the round buttons on either side of the Modubox simultaneously to deploy it.

### Use of the Modubox outside the vehicle



- ☞ Press on the recess on the left hand side of the Modubox to raise (or lower) the handle.

### Stowage inside the vehicle

- ☞ Perform the operations in reverse to fold and stow inside the vehicle.
- ☞ If you have used your Modubox away from the vehicle, take care to reposition it correctly in the housings provided for this purpose.

### BAG HOOK

Located on the left-hand interior wall of the boot, this permits the securing of shopping bags.

## LUGGAGE COVER BLIND (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

### Position 1

5-seat configuration; installed behind the second-row seats, with the third-row seats folded away.



### Installing the roller

- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the blind roller in notch **A**.
- ☞ Compress the right-hand end of the roller and place it in notch **B**.
- ☞ Unroll the blind until it reaches the boot pillars.
- ☞ Insert the guides of the blind into the rails on the pillars.

### Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

## MODUBOX (C4 PICASSO)

Equipment for use both inside the vehicle and away from the vehicle. It is composed of a shopping trolley and a flexible bag (isotherm on some versions) which can be used independently of each other depending on your needs (by detaching the fastenings on each side at the top and bottom).



VI

### To use

- ☞ Unhook the red strap to free the Modubox.
- ☞ Unhook the black strap then press on the round buttons on either side of the Modubox simultaneously to deploy it.

### Use of the Modubox outside the vehicle



- ☞ Press on the recess on the left hand side of the Modubox to raise (or lower) the handle.

### Stowage inside the vehicle

- ☞ Perform the operations in reverse to fold and stow inside the vehicle.
- ☞ If you have used your Modubox away from the vehicle, take care to reposition it correctly in the housings provided for this purpose.

### BAG HOOK

Located on the left-hand interior wall of the boot, this permits the securing of shopping bags.

## LUGGAGE COVER BLIND (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

### Position 1

5-seat configuration; installed behind the second-row seats, with the third-row seats folded away.



### Installing the roller

- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the blind roller in notch **A**.
- ☞ Compress the right-hand end of the roller and place it in notch **B**.
- ☞ Unroll the blind until it reaches the boot pillars.
- ☞ Insert the guides of the blind into the rails on the pillars.

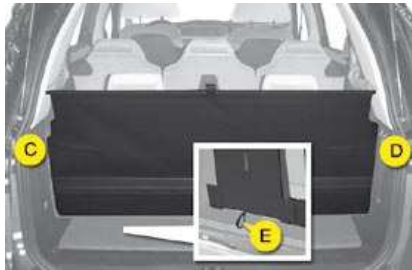
### Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

The roller has a moving flap to avoid interference with the second-row passengers when the seats are in the "reclined" position.

## Position 2

7-seat configuration; installed behind the third-row seats when these are folded away. This position conceals objects stowed in the boot from outside view.



### Installing the roller

- ☞ Roll up the blind, then remove the roller from its initial position.
- ☞ Position the roller, with the blind pull bar uppermost, flap downward.
- ☞ Fold the concertina boards.

- ☞ Engage the lug on the left of the roller in notch **C**.
- ☞ Pass the right-hand side above the third-row armrest.
- ☞ Engage the lug in notch **D**.
- ☞ Pull the seat belt(s) so that they will deploy without locking.
- ☞ Unroll the blind and engage the guides into the rails on the pillars.
- ☞ Lock the seat(s) in position.

### Removing the roller

- ☞ Push the flap towards the seat backrest.
- ☞ Lift the concertina board by grabbing it at the side, then position it vertically.
- ☞ Unlock the seat by pulling the strap **E**.
- ☞ Push the backrest towards the front.
- ☞ Proceed in reverse order to installing.

The blind can only be stored when the seats are folded away. You can position the concertina board vertically to lodge a bulkier object in the boot well.

## Position 3

7-seat configuration; stowed behind the third row seats when these are folded away.



### Installing the roller

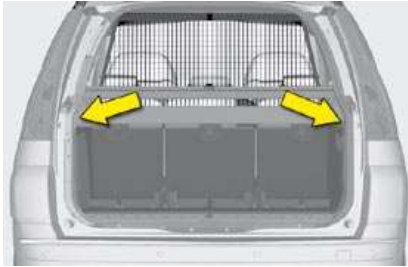
- ☞ Fold the concertina boards.
- ☞ Position the roller, with the blind pull bar uppermost, flap downward.
- ☞ Engage the lug on the left of the roller in notch **C**.
- ☞ Pass the right-hand side above the third-row armrest.
- ☞ Engage the lug in notch **D**.

### Removing the roller

- ☞ Proceed in reverse order to installing.



## HIGH CARGO NET (GRAND C4 PICASSO)



VI

This enables you to maximise the vehicle's loadspace.

It retains objects, preventing them from sliding towards the front of the passenger compartment.

**You insert it under the roller of the luggage-cover blind, securing it on the third-row side mouldings.**

### Position 1

5-seat configuration; installed behind the second row.

#### Installing the roller

- ☞ Remove the protective covers located under the blind roller notches.
- ☞ Position the roller under that of the luggage-cover blind.
- ☞ Raise the flap on the blind, positioning it on top of the blind.
- ☞ Deploy the net, passing it between the rollers and the seats.
- ☞ Pull the net upwards.
- ☞ Anchor it to the roof by means of the fixing points (after you have removed their covers).

#### Removing the roller

- ☞ Perform these operations in reverse order.

### Position 2

2-seat configuration; installed behind the first row.

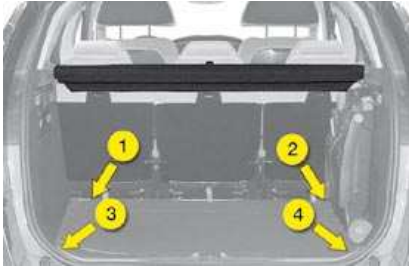
#### Installing the roller

- ☞ With the second-row seats folded away, remove the covers of the Isofix anchoring points located on the seat backrests.
- ☞ Secure the roller on the Isofix anchoring points.
- ☞ Deploy the net and pull it upwards.
- ☞ Anchor it to the roof by means of the fixing points (after you have removed their covers).

#### Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

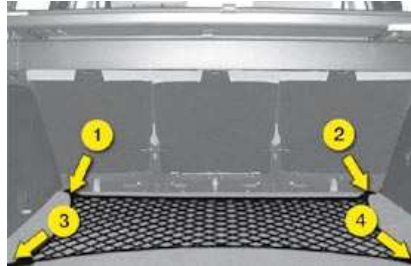
## LUGGAGE ANCHORING RINGS (C4 PICASSO)



There are 4 anchoring rings in the boot to enable you to secure your luggage:

- **1, 2, 3 and 4** on the boot floor.

## LUGGAGE ANCHORING RINGS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)



There are 4 anchoring rings in the boot to enable you to secure your luggage:

- **1, 2, 3 and 4** on the boot floor.

## LUGGAGE RETAINING NET (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Attached to the luggage anchoring rings, it allows objects to be held on the boot floor.

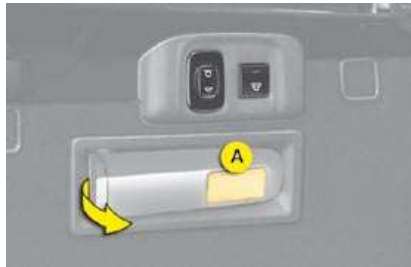
For reasons of safety in the event of sudden braking, it is recommended that you place heavy objects on the floor as close as possible to the backrests of the second-row seats.

## TORCH

This is a removable lamp, incorporated in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.



Grand C4 Picasso



C4 Picasso

## Boot lighting

The boot lamp **A** comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

Various lighting durations are available:

- ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- engine running, no limit.

## Operation of the torch

This torch operates with NiMH rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and recharges while you are driving.

Observe the polarities when fitting the batteries.

Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.

For replacement of the batteries, see the "Practical information - § Changing a bulb" section.

## Using the torch



- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards, as indicated by the arrow.
- ☞ Press the switch **B**, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support **C**, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

## Storing the torch

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.

If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

## GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please follow these precautions:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings\*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for the transportation of children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

**CITROËN recommends** that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

## INSTALLING A CHILD SEAT USING A THREE POINT SEAT BELT

### "Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.**



### "Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger airbag activated.



### Intermediate longitudinal position



\* The rules for transporting children are specific to each country. Refer to the current legislation in your country.



Passenger air bag OFF



## CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN

CITROËN offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

**Group 0: from birth to 10 kg**  
**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



**L1**  
**"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"**  
 Installed in the rearwards-facing position.

**Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg**



**L2**  
**"KIDDY Life"**  
 The use of the restraining cushion is compulsory for the transportation of young children (from 9 to 18 kg).

**Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**



**L3**  
**"RECARO Start"**



**L4**  
**"KLIPPAN Optima"**  
 From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.



**L5**  
**"RÖMER KIDFIX"**  
 Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX anchorages. The child is restrained by the seat belt.



Passenger air bag OFF



## CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN

CITROËN offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

**Group 0: from birth to 10 kg**  
**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



**L1**  
**"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"**  
 Installed in the rearwards-facing position.

**Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg**



**L2**  
**"KIDDY Life"**  
 The use of the restraining cushion is compulsory for the transportation of young children (from 9 to 18 kg).

**Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**



**L3**  
**"RECARO Start"**



**L4**  
**"KLIPPAN Optima"**  
 From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.



**L5**  
**"RÖMER KIDFIX"**  
 Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX anchorages. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

## LOCATION OF CHILD SEATS SECURED BY MEANS OF THE VEHICLE SEAT BELT

In conformity with European law, this table tells you to what extent each of the seat positions in your vehicle may take a child seat that is secured by means of the vehicle seat belt and approved as Universal (a), according to the weight of the child and the position in the vehicle.

|          | Seat position       | Weight groups established by legislation     |                        |                         |                         |
|----------|---------------------|--|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
|          |                     | < 10 kg and < 13 kg<br>(groups 0 (b) and 0+) | 9 – 18 kg<br>(group 1) | 15 – 25 kg<br>(group 2) | 22 – 36 kg<br>(group 3) |
| 1st row  | Front passenger (c) | U  | U                      | U                       | U                       |
| 2nd row  | Lateral             | U  | U                      | U                       | U                       |
|          | Central             | U  | U                      | U                       | U                       |
| 3rd row* | Lateral             | U  | U                      | U                       | U                       |

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles by means of the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shell seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

**U:** seat position suitable for the installation (in conjunction with the vehicle seat belt) of a universal rearwards-facing and/or forwards-facing child seat.

For seats in groups 1, 2 and 3, check that the child seat is correctly secured on the backrest of the vehicle seat. If necessary, remove and stow the head restraint.

\* Applies only to the CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso.

## ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, check that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger airbag\* when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

### Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

\* According to country and current local legislation.



## "ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

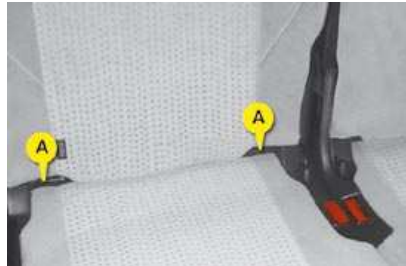
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **new ISOFIX regulation**.

The three second row seats are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, consult the summary table for the location of the ISOFIX child seats.

These are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,



- a ring **B**, used to fix the upper strap, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, indicated by a label on a cover at the top of the seat back.

This ISOFIX mounting system guarantees you fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two locks which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to the ring **B**.

To attach this strap, remove the vehicle seat's head restraint and the cover at the top of the seat back. Then fix the hook on the ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

## ISOFIX CHILD SEAT RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

**RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX** (size category **B1**)

**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**



Installed in the forwards-facing position.  
Fitted with an upper strap to be secured on the upper ring **B**,  
referred to as the **TOP TETHER**.  
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

**VII**

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

**Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.**

## TABLE SUMMARISING THE INSTALLATION OF ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In compliance with European legislation (ECE 16), this table indicates which of the ISOFIX child seats can be installed in seat positions in your vehicle that are equipped with ISOFIX anchoring points.  
For ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats, the ISOFIX size class, defined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is shown on the child seat to the right of the ISOFIX logo.

|                           | Child weight/age given as a guide                   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                   |   |      |
|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------|---|------|
|                           | Less than 10 kg (group 0)<br>Up to approx. 6 months |   | Less than 10 kg (group 0)<br>Less than 13 kg (group 0+)<br>Up to approx. 1 year old |   |   | 9 to 18 kg (group 1)<br>From 1 to 3 years approx. |   |                   |   |      |
| Type of ISOFIX child seat | Shell seat*   |   | "Rearwards-facing"  |   |   | "Rearwards-facing"                                |   | "Forwards-facing" |   |      |
| ISOFIX size classes       | F   | G | C   | D | E | C   | D | A                 | B | B1** |
| ISOFIX rear lateral seats | IL-SU   |   | IL-SU   |   |   | IL-SU   |   | IUF               |   |      |
| ISOFIX central rear seat  | X   |   | IL-SU   |   |   | IL-SU   |   | IUF               |   |      |

**IUF:** seat position suitable for installation of an ISOFIX Universal "Forwards-facing" seat attached using the top belt.

**IL-SU:** seat position suitable for installation of an ISOFIX Semi-Universal seat: ISOFIX "rearwards-facing" child seats equipped with a top belt and ISOFIX "shell" child seats with a top belt.

Do not install ISOFIX child seats equipped with a bar.

\* The ISOFIX shell is secured to the bottom rings on an ISOFIX position, occupying 2 rear seat positions.

\*\* To install ISOFIX child seats type **B1**, remove the head restraints from the seats.

## MANUAL CHILD LOCK

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.

The control is located on the edge of each rear door.



### Locking

- ☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn to the left using the ignition key.

### Unlocking

- ☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn to the right using the ignition key.

## ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.



The control A is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.

### Activation

- ☞ Press the button **A**.

The indicator lamp **A** on the button comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is deactivated.



This warning lamp comes on temporarily on the instrument panel when the child lock is activated.

It also comes on when the ignition is switched on, then switches off approximately ten seconds after the engine is started.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Press the button **A** again.

The indicator lamp **A** on the button switches off, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains off until the child lock is activated.

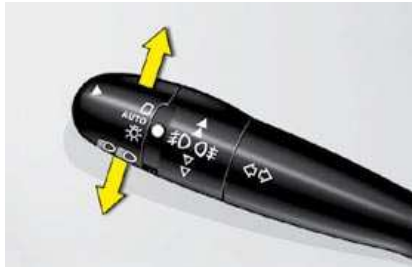
Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



- ☞ Lower the lighting stalk fully when moving to the left.
- ☞ Raise the lighting stalk fully when moving to the right.

## HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press the button **A**, the direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic lighting of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on.

They will switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ If they do not, press button **A** to switch the direction indicators off.

As a safety precaution in a traffic jam, switch on the hazard warning lamps if you are the last in the queue.

## HORN

Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- ☞ Press at the lower part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following circumstances:

- immediate danger,
- approaching a location lacking visibility.

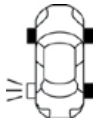
## TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

Sensors fitted in each valve check the tyre pressure during driving and trigger a warning in the event of malfunction (speed above 12 mph (20 km/h)).



The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the vigilance or responsibility of the driver.

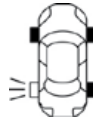
### Flat tyre



The service warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel concerned.

Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check must be carried out when the tyres are cold.

### Puncture



The **STOP** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel concerned.

Stop immediately, avoiding any sudden movement of the steering wheel and the brakes.

Change the damaged wheel (punctured or very deflated tyre), and have the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

### Sensor(s) not detected or faulty



The service warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen

locating the wheel or wheels which are not detected or indicating a fault in the system.

Have the faulty sensor(s) checked by a CITROËN dealer.

This message is also displayed when one of the wheels is away from the vehicle (being repaired) or when one or more wheels without a sensor are fitted.

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor.

All repairs and changing of tyres on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer.

If, when changing a tyre, you install a wheel which is not detected by your vehicle (example: fitting of snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer.

This system does not eliminate the need to have the tyre pressure checked regularly (refer to the "Technical data - § Identification markings" section) to ensure that the optimum dynamic performance of the vehicle is maintained and prevent premature wear of the tyres, particularly in arduous driving conditions (heavy load, high speed).

The tyre pressures must be checked cold, at least once a month. Remember to check the pressure of the spare wheel.

The tyre under-inflation detection system may experience temporary interference due to radio-electric emissions on a frequency close to that used by the system.

## BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

### Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

#### Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.

When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

#### Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

## TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

### Anti-skid regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-skid regulation (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver.

#### Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

### Intelligent Traction Control system\*

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow.

This automatic system continuously checks for situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the system takes over from the **ASR** system by optimising the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control, even without snow tyres and with or without chains.

In extremely severe conditions (snow on top of ice, sand, deep mud...), it can be useful to deactivate the **ESP/ASR** systems to allow a degree of wheel spin and so recover grip.

### Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



☞ Press the "**ESP OFF**" button, located in the centre of the dashboard.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the indicator lamp on the button comes on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are deactivated.

\* Depending on engine type.



## Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

- ☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have the systems checked by a CITROËN dealer.

The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the CITROËN assembly and operation procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer.

## SEAT BELTS



### Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact.

Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

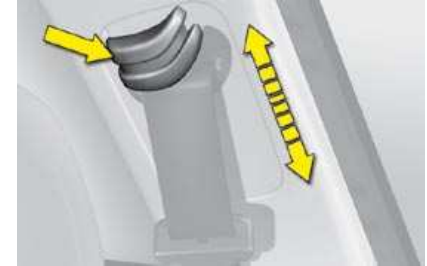
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
- ☞ Press the fastening into its buckle.
- ☞ Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
- ☞ The lap strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
- ☞ The diagonal strap should be positioned across the chest and away from the neck.

Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.

### Height adjustment



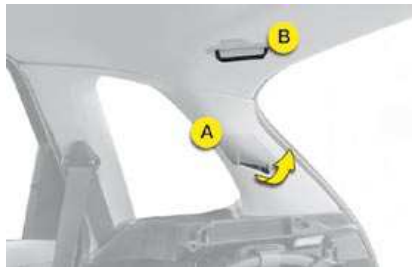
When correctly adjusted, the seat belt shoulder strap falls over the middle of the shoulder.

- ☞ To adjust the belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

### Unfastening

- ☞ To unfasten the belt, press on the red button in the buckle.
- The belt retracts automatically when not in use.

## Rear central seat belt



### Using the seat belt (C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Open the cover **A**.
- ☞ Remove the belt tongues from their housing.
- ☞ Bring the belt tongues up to the relay ring **B**.
- ☞ Insert the attachment, then pass the tongues through the ring.
- ☞ Close the cover **A**. Make sure that the belt is correctly positioned in the recess in the cover provided for this purpose.



### Stowing the belt tongues (C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Operate in reverse order to stow the belt tongues.
- You may opt to leave the seat belt in the relay ring even if not using it.

#### Before use

For safety reasons, it is essential that the seat belt passes through the relay ring.

To avoid damaging or jamming the seat belts, stow them carefully on the sides of the seat backrests.



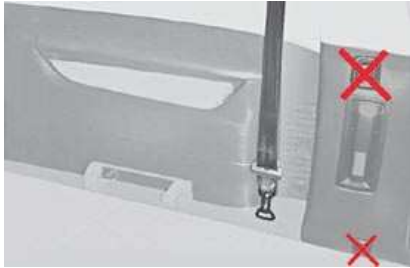
### Routing of the seat belt (C4 Picasso and C4 Grand Picasso)

- ☞ Insert the tongue **C** into the buckle on the right, then insert the second tongue **D** into the buckle on the left.

### Unfastening the seat belt (C4 Picasso and Grand C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Release the buckle **C**, then the buckle **D** and guide the seat belt to its stowing position.

## Third row rear seat belts (Grand C4 Picasso)



### Requirements for the third row passenger seat belts

Take care to attach the third-row passenger seat belts securely to the rings provided for this purpose.

**Do not attach the belts to the anchorage points marked with a red cross, as shown in the illustration.**



### Stowing the tongue of the third-row seat belt

- ☞ Secure the tongue in the location provided on the rear pillar trim.

The third-row passenger seat belts that are not being used can be stowed in order to free up loadspace and facilitate use of the luggage cover.

### Before use:

To avoid damaging or jamming the seat belts, stow them carefully on the sides of the seat backrests.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not invert the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stored automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling rapidly on the strap and releasing it so that it re-winds slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt:

- must be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- must restrain one person of adult size only,
- must not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- must be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- must not be altered or modified to avoid altering its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, all repairs and checks must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer who guarantees that the work is carried out correctly.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer and particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

## Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts**, the pre-tensioning device may be triggered before and independently of the airbags. Triggering of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer.

## AIR BAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. It supplements the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

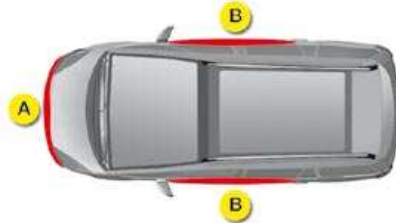
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the air bags are triggered instantly and protect the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the air bags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the air bags will not be triggered; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide optimum protection in these situations.

**The air bags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only operate once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the air bag will not operate.

### Impact detection zones



- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

Triggering of the air bag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

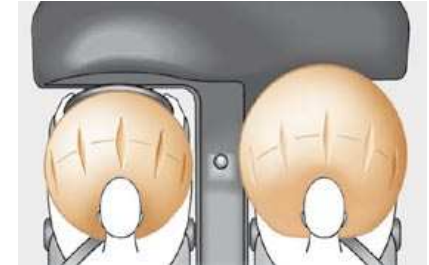
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

### Front airbags

System which protects the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.

The driver's airbag is incorporated in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is incorporated in the dashboard above the glove box.



### Activation

The airbags are triggered simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact applied to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the dashboard to cushion their forward movement.

## Deactivation



Only the front passenger's airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch **1**,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.



This warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

To ensure the safety of your child, it is imperative that the passenger airbag is deactivated when you install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were triggered.

## Activation

When you remove the child seat, turn switch **1** to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so ensure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen, contact a CITROËN dealer to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.



If this warning lamp flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer.

If both airbag warning lamps come on continuously, do not install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

**For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:**

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system is strictly forbidden unless it is carried out by qualified personnel of the CITROËN dealer network.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is triggered cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

## **Front airbags**

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

## **Side airbags**

Use only approved covers on the seats. These will not hinder inflation of the side airbags. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or apply anything to the seat backs. This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the side air bag is triggered.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

## **Curtain airbags**

Do not fix or apply anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is triggered.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.



## Side airbags\*

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each side airbag is incorporated in the front seat back frame, on the door side.



### Operation

It is triggered unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The side airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim pad.

## Impact detection zones



- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

## Curtain airbags\*

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of head injuries.

Each curtain airbag is incorporated in the pillars and the upper part of the passenger compartment.

## Operation

It is triggered at the same time as the corresponding side airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be triggered.  
The airbag is not triggered in the event of a rear or front collision.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, contact a CITROËN dealer to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.

\* According to country.

**For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:**

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system is strictly forbidden unless it is carried out by qualified personnel of the CITROËN dealer network.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is triggered cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

## **Front airbags**

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

## **Side airbags**

Use only approved covers on the seats. These will not hinder inflation of the side airbags. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or apply anything to the seat backs. This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the side air bag is triggered.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

## **Curtain airbags**

Do not fix or apply anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is triggered.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE




The electric parking brake operates as follows:


- **Automatic application/release**  
Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator.
- **Manual application/release**  
Manual application/release of the parking brake is possible by pulling control **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

## Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on control **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:


-  the lighting of the warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "hand-brake on" on the multifunction screen.

 When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.  
Before getting out of the vehicle, check that the warning lamp **P** is lit permanently on the instrument panel.

## Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, or the accelerator, **pull then release** control **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  the extinction of the warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "hand-brake off" on the multifunction screen.

If you pull control **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the "Foot on brake" warning lamp will light up on the instrument panel.

## Maximum application

If necessary, you can utilise **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control **A**, until you see the message "handbrake on" and a beep is heard.

### Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on is variable in its effect (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing),
- in the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park,
- after a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

## Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.



The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the lighting of warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "handbrake on" on the multifunction screen (except NaviDrive).

The normal operating sound will confirm to you the application/release of your electric parking brake.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel is permanently lit.

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

## Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox (first gear or reverse gear engaged):** press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox:** accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ **Electronic gearbox:** accelerate with the selector in position **A**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the extinction of warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "handbrake off" on the multifunction screen.



When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

## To immobilise the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle you need to manually apply the parking brake by **pulling** on control **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the lighting of warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "handbrake on" on the multifunction screen.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

## Activation/Deactivation of the automatic functions\*

The automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated. Activation/deactivation is performed using the configuration menu of the multifunction screen. To do so, select "Personalisation/Configuration/Define the Vehicle parameters/Driving assistance/Automatic handbrake."



The deactivation of these functions is confirmed by the lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the application and release of the parking brake are done manually.

## Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle (towing, etc.) without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** control **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the extinction of warning lamp **P** (red) on the instrument panel and the display of a message "handbrake off" on the multifunction screen.

If the parking brake malfunctions **while applied or if the battery** runs flat, an emergency release is always possible.

## IX



Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel is permanently lit.

\* According to country.

## Dynamic emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.

The electronic stability programme (ESP) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If the dynamic emergency braking malfunctions, one of the following messages will be displayed on the multifunction screen:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

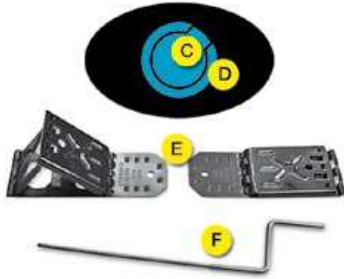
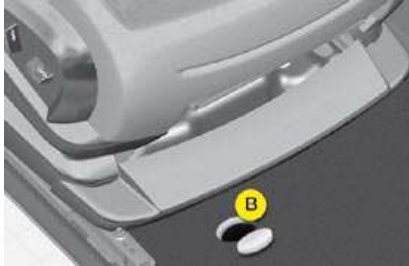


If a failure of the ESP system is signalled by the lighting of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull release" actions on control **A**.



The dynamic emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

## Emergency unlocking



In the event of the electric parking brake malfunctioning or the battery running flat, an emergency mechanism can unlock the parking brake.

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine running, by engaging first gear (manual gearbox), position **P** (automatic gearbox) or **M** or **R** (6-speed electronic gearbox).

- ☞ Switch off the engine, but leave the ignition on.

If the vehicle cannot be immobilised, do not do anything and contact a CITROËN dealer without delay.

- ☞ Fetch the vehicle blocks **E** and the unlocking tool **F** (handle) from the toolbox.

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle by placing blocks **E** at the front and at the rear of one of the rear wheels.

- ☞ Slide the front left-hand seat back as far as possible.

- ☞ **Lift up the floor plug B on the carpet in front of the seat.**

- ☞ Pierce the tab **C** on the tube **D** with the unlocking tool **F**.

- ☞ Place the end of the handle **F** in the tube **D**.

- ☞ Turn the unlocking tool **F** **clockwise**. **For safety reasons**, it is **essential** to continue turning the device as far as it will go or until you hear a knocking noise. The parking brake is released.

- ☞ Remove the unlocking tool **F** and store it with the blocks **E** in the toolbox.

- The operation of the parking brake reinitialises when the ignition is switched off then on again. If the reinitialisation of the parking brake proves impossible, contact a CITROËN dealer.

- The subsequent time required for application may be longer than during normal operation.

IX



For safety reasons, after this manoeuvre it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer urgently to have the plug replaced.

Following an emergency unlocking, immobilisation of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed once the manual emergency unlocking has been deployed and the manual control does not allow the re-application of your parking brake.








Take no action, either on control **A**, or stopping starting the engine while the unlocking tool **F** is engaged.

Take care not to allow moisture or dust in the proximity of the plug.





## Operating anomalies



If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

|   | SITUATION  | CONSEQUENCES   |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Electric parking brake fault and display of message "<b>Parking brake faulty</b>" and the following warning lamps:</p>    | <p>If the electric parking brake fault warning lamp and the service warning lamp light up, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).</p>  |
| 2 | <p>Display of message "<b>Parking brake faulty</b>" and the following warning lamps:</p>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The automatic functions are deactivated.</li> <li>- The hill start assist is unavailable.</li> <li>- The electronic parking brake is only available manually.</li> </ul>                                    |
| 3 | <p>Display of message "<b>Parking brake faulty</b>" and the following warning lamps:</p>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The manual release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.</li> <li>- The hill start assist is unavailable.</li> <li>- The automatic functions and manual application are still available.</li> </ul> |



|         | SITUATION  | CONSEQUENCES   |
|---------|--|--|
| 4       | <p>Display of message <b>"Parking brake faulty"</b> and the following warning lamps:</p> <br> <p>and/or flashing</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The automatic functions are deactivated.</li> <li>- The hill start assist is unavailable.</li> </ul> <p>To apply the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition.</li> <li>☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application.</li> <li>☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps are on.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application may take longer than in normal operation.</li> <li>- If warning lamp <b>P</b> flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.</li> </ul> <p>To release the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ Switch on the ignition.</li> <li>☞ Pull the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.</li> </ul> |
| IX<br>5 | <p>Display of message <b>"Parking brake control faulty – auto parking brake activated"</b> and the following warning lamps:</p>  <p>and/or flashing</p>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available.</li> <li>- Manual application/release of the electric parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable.</li> </ul>   |
| 6       | <p>Battery fault</p>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Lighting of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle.</li> <li>- Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.</li> </ul>  |

## HILL START ASSIST

System which holds your vehicle temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

### Operation



**On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:**

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in **A** or **M** on an electronic gearbox,
- provided you are in **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.



**On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.**



Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, manually apply the parking brake and ensure that the warning lamp **P** (red) on the instrument panel is permanently on.

### Operating fault



If a malfunction of the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer to have the system checked.

## 5- SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



### Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning lamp switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ In temperatures lower than 0 °C, declutch whilst turning the starter to facilitate starting.

### Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Push the gear lever to the right then rearwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

## 6- SPEED ELECTRONIC GEARBOX SYSTEM

The 6-speed electronic gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the driving pleasure of manual gear changing.

Therefore, you have a choice of two driving modes:

- the **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **sequential** mode for manual changing of the gears by the driver.

### Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: selector **2** in position **A**.
- ☞ manual mode: selector **2** in position **M**.

In automatic mode, instant manual operation is possible any time you action one of the paddles **1**.

## 5- SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



### Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning lamp switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ In temperatures lower than 0 °C, declutch whilst turning the starter to facilitate starting.

### Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Push the gear lever to the right then rearwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

## 6- SPEED ELECTRONIC GEARBOX SYSTEM

The 6-speed electronic gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the driving pleasure of manual gear changing.

Therefore, you have a choice of two driving modes:

- the **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **sequential** mode for manual changing of the gears by the driver.

### Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: selector **2** in position **A**.
- ☞ manual mode: selector **2** in position **M**.

In automatic mode, instant manual operation is possible any time you action one of the paddles **1**.

## Displays on the instrument panel



- The selector position is displayed in the instrument panel, on the left on multifunction screens A and C and on the right on the NaviDrive multifunction screen.
- A background-lit position grille associated with the selector allows you to view the position selected.



**When the ignition is on, lighting of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the message "Gearbox faulty" indicates a malfunction.**

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

For safety:

- ☞ Position **N** can only be disengaged if you are pressing the brake pedal.
- ☞ If the gearbox is in position **N** but the selector position is different, reposition the selector on **N** in order to be able to start.

## Moving off



- ☞ To start the engine, the selector must be in position **N**.
- ☞ Press firmly on the brake pedal.
- ☞ Operate the starter.
- ☞ When the engine is running, place the selector on **R**, **A** or **M** as desired.
- ☞ Check, in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

If the selector is not in position **N**, and/or if the brake pedal is not pressed, the corresponding warning lamp(s) are displayed and a message informs you that at least one of these two conditions is not met.

In this case, the engine will not start, recommence the above procedure.

## Reverse gear



### Engaging reverse gear

To engage reverse gear, move the selector to **R**.

**Only attempt to select reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary.**

If the vehicle is moving rapidly, if an inadvertent attempt to engage reverse gear is made, the warning lamp **N** will flash and your vehicle will go automatically into neutral. To re-engage a gear, you have only to reposition the selector on **A**, **M** or **R**.

## Neutral



### Changing to neutral

To change to neutral, move the selector to **N**. If the vehicle is moving, do not select this position even momentarily.

## Automatic mode



### Changing to automatic mode

To change to automatic mode, move the selector to **A**.

## Manual mode




### Changing to manual mode

Manual mode activates when you move the selector to **M**.

- ☞ Pull the paddle "+" to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the paddle "-" to change down a gear.

**IX**

 When the engine is running, before accelerating to move the vehicle, make sure that the position engaged on the selector grille or in the instrument panel is either: **R**, **A** or **M**  
Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running in **R**, **A** or **M**.

## Operation in automatic mode



☞ Move the selector to position **A**. The warning lamp **A** lights up in the instrument panel to confirm the selection.

The gearbox then functions in automatic mode, without any action on your part.

It constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following conditions:

- driving style,
- road profile,
- optimum fuel consumption.

## Temporary manual operation when in automatic mode



By pulling either of the paddles "+" or "-", you can exercise temporary control over gear changing.

The request to change gear will be taken into account. You will still be in automatic mode. The warning lamp **A** remains lit up in the instrument panel.

This function enables you to anticipate certain situations such as the approach of a bend or the need to overtake another vehicle.

## Cancellation of automatic mode

The change from position **A** (driving in automatic mode) to position **M** (driving in manual mode) or vice versa can be made at any time. The warning lamp **A** disappears in the instrument panel.

## Operation in manual mode



☞ Move the selector to position **M**.

## Paddle controls behind the steering wheel

The paddles behind the steering wheel give you access to the six forward gears.

## Changing gear



- ☞ Pull the "+" paddle to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the "-" paddle to change down a gear.

The paddles do not permit you to select neutral or reverse gear, or to exit reverse gear.

- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically, to first gear if needed.
- In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator completely during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.
- For safety reasons, depending on the engine speed, a change down may be performed automatically.



In situations of high engine speeds (heavy acceleration), a change up will not occur unless the driver operates the paddle.

## Acceleration

For optimum acceleration (e.g. to overtake another vehicle), simply press the pedal beyond the point of resistance at the end of its travel, by pressing down firmly.

## Vehicle stationary, with the engine running

In the event of a prolonged stop with the engine running, the gearbox changes automatically to neutral **N**.

## Stopping the vehicle

Before stopping the engine, you can choose:

- ☞ to leave the vehicle in neutral; move the selector to position **N**.
- ☞ to leave the vehicle with a gear engaged (**R**, **A** or **M**); place the selector in the chosen position prior to stopping the engine. In this case, the vehicle cannot be moved.

In all cases, it is essential to apply the parking brake. Check that the parking brake warning lamp is on in the instrument panel.



Do not use the accelerator to hold your vehicle on a gradient. Use either the brake pedal or the parking brake.

Before doing anything in the engine compartment, check that the selector is in neutral **N**.



## AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of fully automatic operation or the driving pleasure of manual gear changing.

Therefore, you have a choice of two driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

### Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: selector **1** in position **D**,
- ☞ sequential mode: selector **1** in position **M**.

## Displays on the instrument panel



Multifunction screen A or C



NaviDrive multifunction screen

The position of the selector is displayed on the instrument panel, on the left on multifunction screens **A** and **C**, on the right on the NaviDrive multifunction screen.

A position grille relating to the selector allows you to view the position that is selected.



For safety:

- position **P** can be disengaged only if you press the brake pedal,
- when a door is opened, a sound signal is heard if the selector is not in position **P**,
- always make sure that the selector is in position **P** before you leave your vehicle.

If the gearbox is in position **P** but the position of the selector is different, reposition the selector on **P** so that you can start the vehicle.

Never press the brake and accelerator pedals simultaneously. Braking and acceleration should be done only with the right foot. Pressing both pedals simultaneously introduces a risk of damage to the gearbox.

## Moving off



- ☞ To start the engine, press the brake pedal and place the selector in position **P**.
- ☞ Operate the starter.
- ☞ When the engine is running, place the selector on **R**, **D** or **M** as required.
- ☞ Check, in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and accelerate.
- ☞ If the selector is not in position **P**, a message "place automatic gearbox in position **P**" appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by a beep and the flashing of **P** on the instrument panel.

- ☞ To avoid incoherence between the position of the selector and the actual position of the gearbox, always exit from position **P** when you switch on the ignition and press the brake pedal.

Otherwise, when the ignition is on or the engine is running:

- ☞ reposition the selector in position **P**,
- ☞ put your foot on the brake pedal and then select the gear you want.

## Park



This position of the selector is used to prevent the vehicle from moving when you are stationary.

- ☞ To select position **P**, move the selector back to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
- ☞ To exit position **P**, move the selector to the right and then to the position you want.
- ☞ Only engage this position when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Make sure that the selector is correctly positioned.

## Reverse gear




Only engage this position when the vehicle is stationary. To prevent snatching, do not accelerate too soon after selection.

## Neutral



Never select position **N** if the vehicle is moving.



Never select positions **P** or **R** if the vehicle is not stationary.

If, while the vehicle is moving, position **N** is engaged inadvertently, allow the engine to idle before engaging position **D** or **M**.

## Automatic operation



☞ Move the selector to position **D**.

The gearbox constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following parameters:

- driving style,
- road profile,
- vehicle load.

The gearbox is then operating in **auto-adaptive** mode, without requiring any intervention on your part.

For certain manoeuvres (for example overtaking), you can obtain maximum acceleration by pressing the accelerator pedal down hard, which then produces an automatic change down to a lower gear.

When braking, the gearbox may change down automatically in order to provide effective engine braking.

If you lift your foot off the accelerator abruptly, the gearbox will not change up.

## Temporary manual operation when in automatic mode



An action on the "+" or "-" paddles allows you to exercise temporary control over the changing of gears. The request to change gear will be taken into account. You will still be in automatic mode. The warning lamp **D** remains lit up in the instrument panel.

This function enables you to anticipate certain situations such as the approach of a bend or the need to overtake another vehicle.

## Manual operation



Position of the selector for manual gear changing.



☞ Move the selector to position **M**.



- ☞ Pull the "+" paddle to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the "-" paddle to change down a gear.
- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically to first gear.
- In sequential mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.

- For safety reasons, depending on the engine speed, a change up or down may be performed automatically.
- It is possible at any time to move from position **D** (driving in automatic mode) to position **M** (driving in sequential mode) or vice versa.



The flashing of the warning lamp for the position requested signals that this position is not yet obtained.

If the warning lamp is on fixed, the position is confirmed.

Display of a dash in the rev counter indicates a malfunction. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Lighting of the service warning lamp accompanied by a message and an audible signal indicates an operating fault. In this case:

- a marked snatching may be felt when selecting **R** for reverse gear,
- the gearbox is locked in one gear,
- do not exceed a speed of 60 mph (approx. 100 km/h).

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## FIXED CENTRED CONTROLS STEERING WHEEL

### Cruise control/speed limiter and parking space function controls

1. Selection of parking space function.
2. Selection of cruise control or speed limiter.
3. Activation/Deactivation of speed limiter.  
Deactivation/Reactivation of cruise control.
4. Increase speed/Activation of cruise control.
5. Decrease speed/Activation of cruise control.



### Audio system controls

- A. Volume decrease.
  - B. Volume increase.
  - C. Search of higher frequencies.
  - D. Scrolling of pre-set stations.
  - E. Mute.
- (see chapter "Audio and Telematics")



## Optional function controls

1. Pick up/Hang up the telephone (see chapter "Audio and Telematics").
2. Rheostat for dashboard lighting.
3. Start of voice recognition (see chapter "Audio and Telematics").
4. Personalisation button:
  - courtesy lamp on/off or
  - diagnostics or
  - personalisation of the displaying of information on the instrument panel or
  - choice of background colour for the instrument panel.

To view the personalisation menu via this button, press it for more than two seconds.
5. Air recirculation.



## Multifunction screen controls

- A. Selection of the type of information to be displayed on the right of the screen (radio, trip computer, navigation/guidance...).  
For the multifunction screen A, choice of activation/deactivation of your functions and adjustment choices.
- B. Access to the "Main Menu"\*.
  - C. Confirmation of the function chosen or of the value modified.

Pick up/Hang up (see chapter "Audio and Telematics").
- D. Scrolling in the multifunction screen.
- E. Cancellation of the current operation or return to the previous display.

\* To comply with legislation in certain countries, the "Menu" control may be deactivated while the vehicle is in motion.

## SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

Once the limit speed has been reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is switched on manually: a speed of at least 20 mph (around 30 km/h) must be programmed.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the observance of speed limits or of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

## Steering wheel controls



The speed limiter controls are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

## Displays on the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel display.

## Programming

Rotate the control **1** to the "LIM" position.



On selection of the function, the previous memorised speed and the information "OFF" are displayed on the instrument panel.

With the engine running, you can adjust the memorised maximum speed, by means of short or long presses on:

- ☞ button **4** to increase the memorised maximum speed,
- ☞ button **2** to decrease the memorised maximum speed.

Successive presses will modify the maximum speed in steps of 1 mph and a sustained press in steps of 3 mph.

## Activation

When the desired maximum speed is displayed, press button **3** so that the limitation is activated.



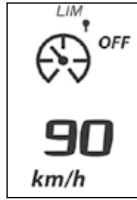
The information "OFF" then disappears from the instrument panel display.

While the function is active, pressing the accelerator pedal will not enable the programmed speed to be exceeded, except if you press the pedal hard down to beyond the end-of-travel switch.

The speed of your vehicle may vary slightly in relation to that memorised.

## Deactivation

Press on button **3**.



This action causes the information **"OFF"** to appear on the instrument panel display.

This action does not cancel the memorised maximum speed which remains displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

## Override of the programmed speed

The accelerator pedal is equipped with an end-of-travel switch. If you action this switch by pressing the pedal hard down, you can exceed the memorised maximum speed at any time.

During the time the speed is being exceeded, the displayed speed flashes.

You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return below the maximum speed and render the function active again.

If during the operation of the speed limiter, the system is unable to keep within the maximum speed (for example on a steep descent or under heavy acceleration) then the speed flashes. Adapt your speed as necessary.

The function will re-engage when your speed returns below the desired maximum speed.

## Return to normal driving



- ☞ By moving the control **1** from position **"LIM"** to position **0**.
- ☞ By the engine stopping.

The speed previously chosen is still memorised.

## Operating fault

If there is a speed limiter malfunction, a message will display accompanied by an audible signal and lighting of the service warning lamp. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.



On a steep downhill gradient or on sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

Use of floor mats that are not approved by CITROËN may hinder access to the accelerator pedal and thus interfere with the functioning of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of interfering with the pedals:

- check that the floor mat is correctly positioned,
- never use more than one floor mat.



## CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is switched on manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (approx. 40 km/h) and you must engage:

- fourth gear on a manual gearbox,
- second gear, in sequential mode, on an electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox,
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the observance of speed limits or of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

### Steering wheel controls



The cruise control switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

### Displays on the instrument panel

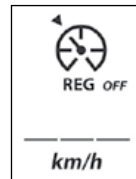


The programmed information is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel display.

### Programming

Rotate the control **1** to the "REG" position.

### Activation



On selection of the function via control **1**, **no cruise speed has yet been memorised.**

Once the desired speed has been reached using the accelerator, press button **2** or button **4**. The cruise speed is then memorised. It is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

You can then release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will automatically keep to the speed chosen.

The speed of your vehicle may vary slightly in relation to that memorised.

You can adjust the memorised speed on the instrument panel display by pressing on:

- ☞ button **4** to increase the speed,
- ☞ button **2** to decrease the speed.

Successive presses modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph and a sustained press in steps of 3 mph.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Either by pressing on the brake pedal or on the clutch pedal.
- ☞ Or by pressing button **3**.
- ☞ Or if either the ESP or the ASR system is active.

The cruise control is not active if the gear lever is in neutral.



These actions cause the information "OFF" to appear on the instrument panel display.

These actions do not cancel the cruise speed which remains displayed in the instrument panel.

## Reactivation

### By recall of the memorised speed

After a disengagement, press on button **3**. Your vehicle automatically returns to the memorised cruise speed which is displayed in zone **A**.

If the memorised cruise speed is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate to reach the former.

### By selection of the current speed

Press on button **2** or **4** once the desired speed has been reached. The information **"OFF"** will then disappear from the instrument panel display.

## Overriding the programmed speed

During the operation of cruise control, it is always possible to use the accelerator to go faster than the cruise speed (for example to overtake another vehicle). The speed displayed in zone **A** flashes.

You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return to the cruise speed.

If during the operation of cruise control, the system is unable to keep within the memorised speed (for example on a steep descent), then the speed flashes. Adapt your speed as necessary.

## Return to normal driving



- ☞ By an action on the control **1** from position **"REG"** to position **0**.
- ☞ By the engine stopping.  
The cruise speed previously chosen is no longer memorised.

## Operating fault

If there is a malfunction, a message will display accompanied by an audible signal and lighting of the service warning lamp.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.



Cruise control should only be used when the driving conditions allow you to drive at a constant speed.

Do not use it in heavy traffic, or on dangerous or slippery roads.

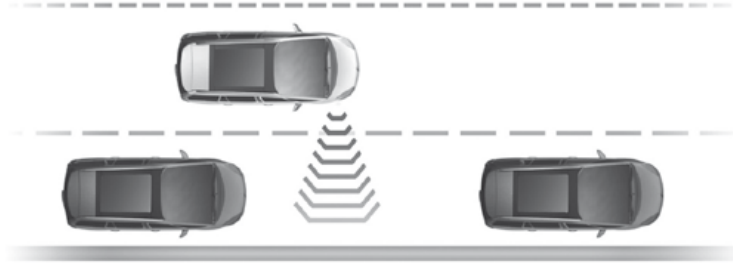
The driver must remain attentive and in full control of his vehicle.

You are recommended to keep your feet within range of the pedals.

To avoid any risk of interfering with the pedals:

- check that the floor mat is correctly positioned,
- never use more than one floor mat.

## PARKING SPACE SENSOR



System which measures the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles. It measures the size of the space and gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances necessary for your manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

### Displays on the instrument panel



The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measuring are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measuring phase is terminated.
- **flashing:** the measuring is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can select the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A**. The fixed lighting of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

## Operation

You have identified a parking space:

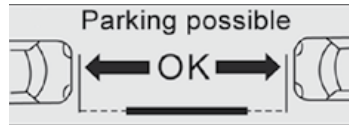
- ☞ Press button **A** to select the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During the measuring, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approx. 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.

The system then measures the size of the space.

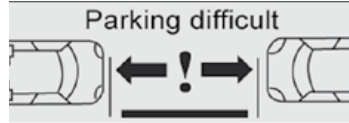
- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message on the multifunction screen accompanied by a gong.
- ☞ Depending on the message issued by the system, you may or may not be able to perform the manoeuvre.

The function displays the following types of message:

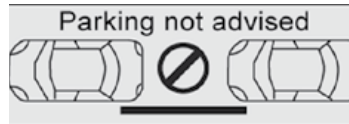
### Parking possible



### Parking difficult



### Parking not advised



The function deselects itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- if measuring is not requested,
- within five minutes of selection of the function,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approx. 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too large, the system may not be able to measure the space.

- The function remains available after each measurement and thus can measure more than one space during your search.
- In bad weather conditions or in winter, make sure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.
- The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking assistance during the space measuring phase when you are in forward gear.



If there is a malfunction, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).



This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

The lane departure warning system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

### Activation

☞ Press button **A**, the indicator lamp comes on.

### Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again, the indicator lamp switches off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

### Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

The detection may be impeded:

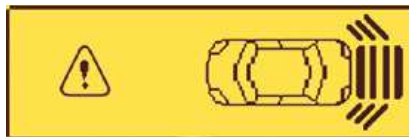
- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

## AUDIBLE AND/OR VISUAL REAR PARKING ASSISTANCE

System consisting of four proximity sensors, located in the rear bumper.

This detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) behind the vehicle, except obstacles located just below the bumper.

An object, such as a stake, a road-works cone or any other similar object may be detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre, but may no longer be detected when the vehicle comes close to it.



The parking assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

### Activation

The system is activated as soon as reverse gear is engaged, accompanied by an audible signal. The proximity information is given by:

- an audible signal, which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a graphic on the multifunction screen, with blocks which become increasingly closer to the vehicle.

When the distance between the rear of the vehicle and the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and the "Danger" symbol appears on the multifunction screen.

On completion of the manoeuvre, when you exit reverse gear, the system becomes inactive.

### Programming

You can activate or deactivate the system by means of the multifunction parking configuration menu. The system state is memorised when switching off the ignition.

For more information on access to the parking assistance menu, refer to the section on vehicle configuration for your screen under "Multifunction screens".

The system will be deactivated automatically when towing a trailer or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

### Operating faults



If there is an operating fault, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep) and a message on the multifunction screen.

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, frost or snow.

## AUDIBLE AND VISUAL FRONT AND REAR PARKING ASSISTANCE

System consisting of four proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.

It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located in front of and behind the vehicle, except for obstacles located immediately below the bumper.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.



The parking assistance is **switched on**:

- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and/or displaying of the vehicle on the multifunction screen.

The proximity information is indicated by:

- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a diagram on the multifunction screen, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction screen version.

The parking assistance is **switched off**:

- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

The parking assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

## Deactivation

☞ Press button **A**, the warning lamp comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

## Reactivation



☞ Press button **A** again, the warning lamp switches off, the system is reactivated.

## Operating fault



If an operating fault occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep), when reverse gear is engaged.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the vehicle is being driven at a speed below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sources of noise (motorcycles, lorries, pneumatic drills...) may trigger the parking assistance audible signals.



## PNEUMATIC SUSPENSION



**Grand C4  
Picasso**

**C4 Picasso**

The rear pneumatic suspension enhances driving comfort by maintaining a constant body height whatever the vehicle load.

### Operation

- If there is an increase in vehicle load, a sinking of the rear of the vehicle is detected and the pneumatic springs inflate in order to compensate for the extra weight.
- If there is a decrease in load, a rising of the rear of the vehicle is detected and so the pneumatic springs deflate to return the vehicle to its nominal height.
- If the vehicle has been unused for a long period, the pneumatic springs may inflate if necessary when you unlock or open a door, so as to return the vehicle to its nominal height.

If you do not reactivate the system manually, the automatic correction will be activated as soon as the vehicle starts to move. During the correction, the service warning lamp lights up and a message on the screen reminds you not to exceed 10 km/h (6 mph).

The automatic correction does not function if the doors or the boot are open.

The automatic correction operates even if your vehicle is in power economy mode.

### Activation/Deactivation

The automatic correction can be deactivated:

- ☞ press on the button **B** for approximately two seconds,
- ☞ release the button when you hear a beep. Deactivation is confirmed by the lighting of the indicator lamp on the button **B**.

It is essential that you should deactivate the system in the following instances:

- working under the vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- transporting the vehicle on a truck or on a boat.

To reactivate the automatic correction:

- ☞ press again on the button **B** for approximately two seconds,
- ☞ release the button when you hear a beep. Activation is confirmed by the extinction of the indicator lamp on the button **B**.

**In the event of the system malfunctioning, alert messages, always in association with the service warning lamp, will display in the instrument panel. Consult a CITROËN dealer.**

## Loading/unloading assistance



Grand C4  
Picasso

C4 Picasso

The pneumatic suspension has an additional function associated with it: the possibility to raise or lower the height of the rear of the vehicle when stationary, in order to facilitate loading/unloading of the boot.

IX

### Increasing the height of the boot floor

☞ Press continuously at the top of the control **A**, which is located in the boot, on the left-hand side.

This action will be accompanied by an audible signal. You can stop the movement at any time by releasing the control.

3 beeps will confirm that the movement has gone as far as it can.

### Returning to the normal height

☞ Press briefly twice at the bottom of the control **A**.

### Decreasing the height of the boot floor

☞ Press continuously at the bottom of the control **A**.

This action will be accompanied by a sound signal. You can stop the movement at any time by releasing the control.

3 beeps will confirm that the movement has gone as far as it can.

### Returning to the normal height

☞ Press briefly twice at the top of the control **A**.

### Special features

- If you start the vehicle without having returned it to the normal height, automatic correction will activate as soon as the vehicle starts to move. During the correction, the service warning lamp lights up and a message on the screen reminds you not to exceed 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The loading assistance does not function in the following instances:
  - If the button **B** is lit up,
  - in power economy mode,
- when you first use the function, press for two seconds on the control **A** to initialise the system. All subsequent actions will be followed immediately by the desired results.

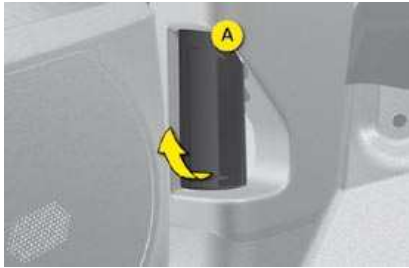


Driving with the boot in a low position may damage the components located under the bodyshell.

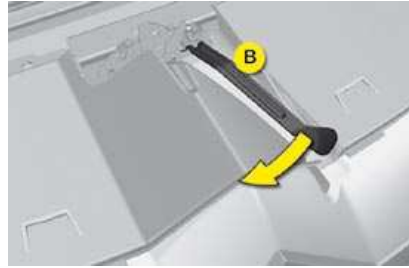
## BONNET

Protects the components of the engine and provides access for checking levels.

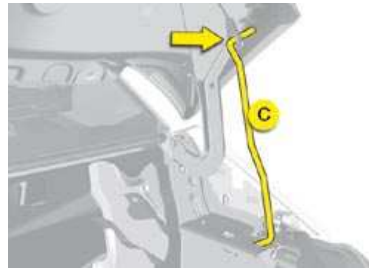
### Opening



- ☞ Open the driver's door.
- ☞ Pull the interior release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- ☞ Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the driver's door is closed.

This operation must only be carried out when the vehicle is stationary. Avoid opening the bonnet in strong winds.

When the engine is hot, take care when handling the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay (risk of burns).

### Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet then slam it home at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully closed.

## BLEEDING THE DIESEL FILTER

### Protective cover



### Removal

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by unclipping first point **1**, then **3** and **4**.
- ☞ Unclip point **2** pulling towards you, then lift.

### Refitting

- ☞ Clip point **2** first.
- ☞ Lower the cover, centring it.
- ☞ Clip points **1** and **4**, pushing vertically and slightly rearwards.
- ☞ Clip point **3**, pushing vertically.

## Bleeding water from the fuel filter



Bleed on a regular basis (at every oil change).

To evacuate the water, slacken the bleed screw or the water-in-diesel-fuel sensor, which is located at the base of the filter.

Persist until water ceases to flow out.

Then retighten the bleed screw or the water-in-diesel-fuel sensor.

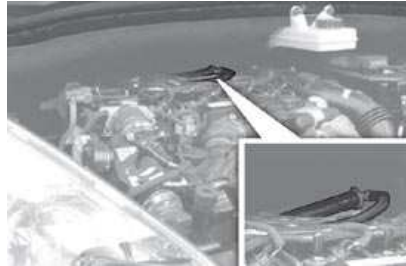


## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)



### HDi 138 engine

Detach the protective cover for access to the priming pump.



### HDi 110 engine

Detach the protective cover for access to the priming pump.


## Priming the fuel circuit

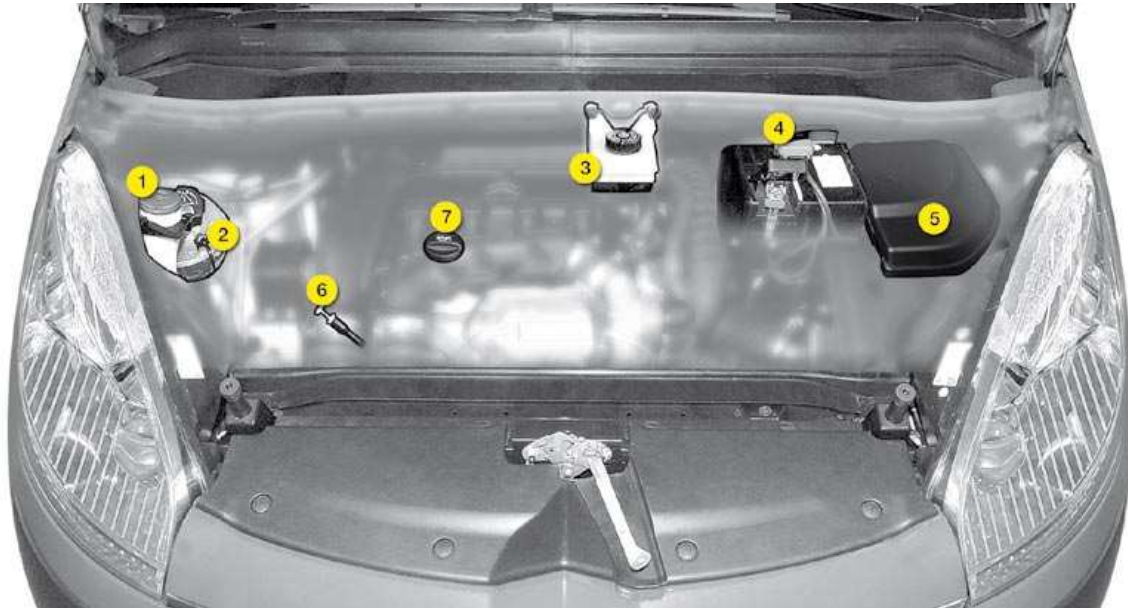
In the event of running out of fuel:

- ☞ after filling (minimum 5 litres), squeeze the manual priming pump repeatedly, until some resistance is felt,
- ☞ then operate the starter, gently pressing the accelerator until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait 15 seconds before trying again.

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, repeat the procedure from the beginning. When the engine is idling, accelerate gently to complete the purge of the circuit.

 HDi engines are of a highly technical nature.  
All maintenance and repairs require specific qualifications which only your CITROËN dealer can guarantee.



## PETROL ENGINES

The covers and caps allow you access for checking the level of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

- |  |                           |                           |
|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir. | 3. Brake fluid reservoir. | 6. Engine oil dipstick.   |
| 2. Coolant header tank.                    | 4. Battery/Fuses.         | 7. Engine oil filler cap. |
|  | 5. Fuse box.              |                           |



## DIESEL ENGINES

The covers and caps allow you access for checking the level of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for repriming the fuel.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.</li> <li>2. Coolant header tank</li> <li>3. Brake fluid reservoir.</li> <li>4. Battery/Fuses.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Fuse box.</li> <li>6. Engine oil dipstick.</li> <li>7. Engine oil filler cap.</li> <li>8. Priming pump*.</li> <li>9. Degas screw*.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|



As the diesel circuit is pressurised, any work on this circuit is prohibited.

\* According to engine.

## CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as some parts of the engine can be extremely hot (risk of burns).

### Oil level



The reading will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

Check this level also between each scheduled service and before long journeys.

### Oil change

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the interval for this operation.



In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

### Oil specification

The oil must correspond to your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

### Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

### Fluid change

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the interval for this operation.

This fluid must be changed regularly. Fluid which has been used for too long may cause a loss of braking efficiency.

### Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and fulfil the DOT4 standards.

### Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

**On vehicles which are fitted with a particle emission filter, the fan may operate after the vehicle has been switched off, even if the engine is cold.**

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

### Coolant change

The coolant does not have to be changed.

### Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.



## Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the minimum level of this fluid is indicated by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Top up the level when you next stop the vehicle.

### Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.

Reservoir capacities:

- screenwash: approximately 3 litres,
- screenwash and headlamp wash: approximately 6 litres.

## Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

A low additive level is indicated by lighting of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen.

### Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer without delay.

## Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer (France) or an authorised waste disposal site.

## CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Maintenance and Warranty Guide and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer.

### Battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

### Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary** (refer to the "Engines" paragraph).

A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

### Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the replacement interval for this component.

### Particle filter system (Diesel)

Complementary to the catalytic converter, this filter makes an active contribution to the preservation of air quality by the retaining of the unburnt pollutant particles. Black exhaust fumes are thus no longer emitted.

After prolonged idling or driving at very low speeds, you may occasionally notice water vapour being emitted from the exhaust when accelerating. This is of no consequence to the running of the vehicle or to the environment.

If there is risk of clogging, a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal and lighting of the service warning lamp.

This alert tells you that the particle filter is starting to fill up (in conditions of urban driving of exceptionally long duration: low speeds, traffic jams etc.)

To regenerate the filter, it is advised to drive as soon as possible, when traffic conditions permit, at a speed of 40 mph (around 60 km/h) or more for at least five minutes (until the alert message disappears).

If this alert persists, consult a CITROËN dealer.

X

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

## 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the checking interval for this component.

## Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the level checking interval for this component.

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For information relating to checking the brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer.

## Parking brake

If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer.



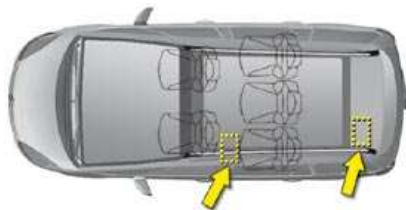
Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specifications.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.

## PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a bottle of sealant which permits **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The kit is located in the boot under the floor or under the flap in the second row left-hand passenger footwell (open by turning the screw a quarter of a turn).

This repair kit is available from CITROËN dealers.

It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 4 mm, located exclusively on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

## Using the kit

- ☞ Tick the wheel to be repaired on the speed limitation sticker enclosed then affix the sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Clip the bottle **1** on the compressor **2**.
- ☞ Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position "0".
- ☞ Connect the pipe of the bottle **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
- ☞ Unwind the pipe of the compressor **2** fully before connecting it to the bottle.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



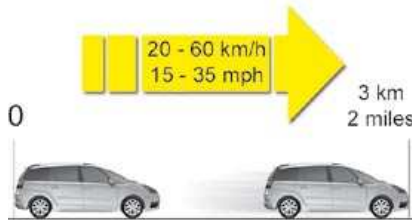
# PRACTICAL INFORMATION

- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **A** to position "1" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



If this pressure has not been reached after approximately three minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a CITROËN dealer to have your vehicle repaired.

- Remove the compressor and store the bottle in the plastic bag, supplied in the kit, to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.
- Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the pressure.
- Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position "1"; to deflate: switch **A** in position "0" and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
- ☞ Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h]).
- ☞ Visit a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.



**!** Take care, the bottle of sealant contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.

The expiry date of the sealant is indicated on the base of the bottle.

The bottle is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment, take it to a CITROËN dealer or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from CITROËN dealers.

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the tyre under-inflation warning light will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer.

## CHANGING A WHEEL

### Access to the tools



Depending on equipment, the tools are to be found either in the compartment under the second-row passenger footwells (the compartment is opened by turning the screw a quarter turn) or in the well under the third-row left-hand seat.

1. Tool for removing the central trim on alloy wheels\*  
or
2. Tool for removing the chrome covers on the wheel bolts on alloy wheels\*
3. Centring guide\*
4. Tool for removing the wheel bolts
5. Vehicle jack with integrated handle
6. Security bolt socket (located in the glovebox)\*\*

7. Short extension for C4 Picasso
8. Long extension for Grand C4 Picasso (located in the well under the right hand third row seat)
9. Two chocks, provided for changing a wheel or for other uses on the vehicle (such as unlocking the electric parking brake)
10. Parking brake release tool (electric parking brake)
11. Removable towing eye

\* With alloy wheels only.

\*\* With security bolts only.

**!** Switch on your hazard warning lamps, ensure that any passengers leave the vehicle and find a safe place to wait away from traffic (e.g. behind crash barriers or on a grass verge).

Never get underneath the vehicle if it is supported only by the jack; use a stand.

The jack and the tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use for any other purpose.

Do not to exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) on your spare wheel.

Have the original wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible.

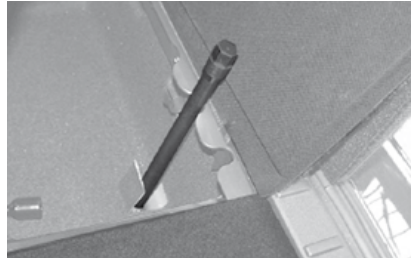
## Access to the spare wheel



C4 Picasso

### Taking out the wheel (C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Lift the boot floor covering to reveal the spare wheel carrier drive on the left.
- ☞ Take the extension **7** from the set of tools.
- ☞ Lift up the spare wheel carrier drive aperture cap, if fitted.
- ☞ Fit the extension to the drive then engage the head of the wheel-brace **4** on the extension.
- ☞ Turn the assembly **clockwise** to the end of its travel to lower the spare wheel carrier; the spare wheel is now resting on the ground.
- ☞ Pull the wheel towards you and pass the linking plate through the centre of the wheel.




Grand C4 Picasso

### Taking out the wheel (Grand C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Lift the boot floor covering to reveal the spare wheel carrier drive on the right.
- ☞ Take the extension **8** clipped in the rear of the well below the right hand third-row seat.
- ☞ Lift up the spare wheel carrier drive aperture cap.
- ☞ Fit the extension to the drive then engage the head of the wheel-brace **4** on the extension.
- ☞ Turn the assembly **clockwise** to the end of its travel to lower the spare wheel carrier; the spare wheel is now resting on the ground.
- ☞ Pull the wheel towards you and pass the linking plate through the centre of the wheel.

## Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ The tyre valve must be facing upwards.
  - ☞ Pass the linking plate through the centre of the wheel (first removing the central trim on certain alloy wheels).
  - ☞ Turn the carrier drive **anti-clockwise** to draw in the carrier cable. Initially the drive will turn freely, then the cable will tighten to raise the wheel.
- Check that the wheel is tight against the vehicle floor and not interfering with other nearby components (e.g. the exhaust).
- ☞ Stow the tools.

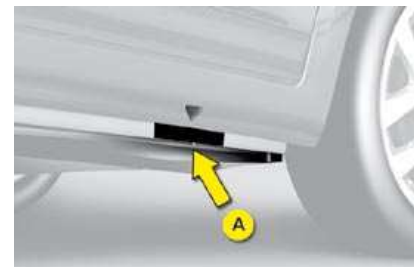
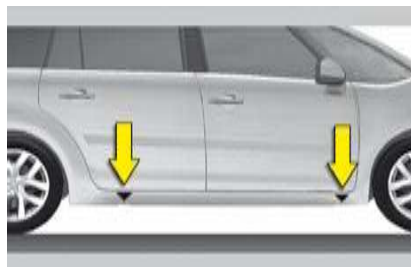


With the damaged wheel now under the vehicle floor, the vehicle has reduced ground clearance, so take extra care when reversing or driving on uneven surfaces, including kerbs.

Retrieval of the spare wheel and stowage of the affected road wheel are operations that should be done with the vehicle supported on its wheels, not by the jack.



## Removing a wheel



- ☞ Park the vehicle on level, stable and non-slippery ground. Apply the parking brake (a message and a warning lamp appear on the instrument panel).  
Switch off the ignition and engage first gear or reverse gear depending on the slope (position **P** if an automatic gearbox, **D** or **R** if a 6-speed electronic gearbox).
- ☞ Use a chock to secure the vehicle more safely. Place the chock **9** in front of the wheel that is opposite the wheel affected.

- ☞ Detach the trim using the removing tool **4**, pulling in the area of the valve.  
For vehicles with alloy wheels, insert the trim removing tool **1** into the recess in the central trim and lever it off.  
For vehicles with alloy wheels that have visible bolts, remove the chrome covers using the removing tool **2**.

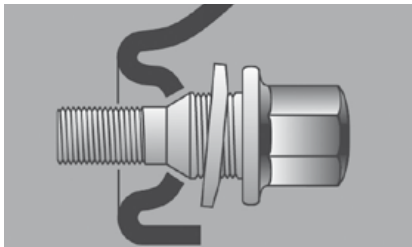
- ☞ Slacken the wheel bolts. For vehicles with alloy wheels, undo the security bolts using the security socket **6**.
- ☞ Position the jack under the vehicle, at the jacking point **A** closest to the wheel to be changed.
- ☞ Unwind the jack **5** until its bracket is in contact with the ground. Make sure that the jack is vertical under the jacking point used.
- ☞ Continue to extend the jack so as to raise the vehicle.
- ☞ Undo the wheel bolts and remove the wheel.

XI



Before any operation of this sort, it is advisable to deactivate your pneumatic suspension.

## Temporary use spare wheel



If your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel for temporary use only, when fitting this it is normal to observe that the wheel bolts do not come to bear directly on the wheel rim.

The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolts and washers are clean and in good condition.

## Fitting a wheel

- ☞ Position the wheel with the aid of the centring guide **3**.
- ☞ Do up the 3 bolts by hand, then remove the centring guide **3**. Position the 4th bolt.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace **4**.
- ☞ Retract the jack **5** and disengage it.
- ☞ Tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace **4**.
- ☞ Ensure that the tyre pressure is correct.

## Under-inflation detection

Wheels with under-inflation detection have tyre pressure sensors. Have repairs to them carried out by a CITROËN dealer. The spare wheel does not have a sensor.

## Security bolts (alloy wheels)

Each wheel may be equipped with one security bolt.

To remove it:

- ☞ Remove its protective cover using of the tool for removing the chrome covers **2**.
- ☞ Use the security bolt socket **6** with the wheelbrace **4**.

## Spare wheel dimensions

If your spare wheel has dimensions different from those of the normal vehicle wheels (identified by a label), it is imperative to use the spare wheel only temporarily, to drive with caution, not to exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) and to have the tyre repaired and the normal wheel refitted as soon as possible.

## Tyre pressures

These are indicated on the label on the front left-hand door pillar (see section "Technical Data - § Identification markings").

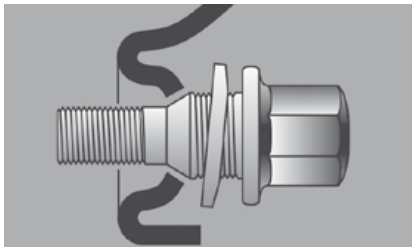


The wheel bolts are specific to each type of wheel.

If new wheels are fitted, check with your CITROËN dealer that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels.

Note: take care to note down the code number on the head of the security bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain a replacement security bolt socket from a CITROËN dealer.

## Temporary use spare wheel



If your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel for temporary use only, when fitting this it is normal to observe that the wheel bolts do not come to bear directly on the wheel rim.

The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolts and washers are clean and in good condition.

## Fitting a wheel

- ☞ Position the wheel with the aid of the centring guide **3**.
- ☞ Do up the 3 bolts by hand, then remove the centring guide **3**. Position the 4th bolt.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace **4**.
- ☞ Retract the jack **5** and disengage it.
- ☞ Tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace **4**.
- ☞ Ensure that the tyre pressure is correct.

## Under-inflation detection

Wheels with under-inflation detection have tyre pressure sensors. Have repairs to them carried out by a CITROËN dealer. The spare wheel does not have a sensor.

## Security bolts (alloy wheels)

Each wheel may be equipped with one security bolt.

To remove it:

- ☞ Remove its protective cover using of the tool for removing the chrome covers **2**.
- ☞ Use the security bolt socket **6** with the wheelbrace **4**.

## Spare wheel dimensions

If your spare wheel has dimensions different from those of the normal vehicle wheels (identified by a label), it is imperative to use the spare wheel only temporarily, to drive with caution, not to exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) and to have the tyre repaired and the normal wheel refitted as soon as possible.

## Tyre pressures

These are indicated on the label on the front left-hand door pillar (see section "Technical Data - § Identification markings").



The wheel bolts are specific to each type of wheel.

If new wheels are fitted, check with your CITROËN dealer that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels.

Note: take care to note down the code number on the head of the security bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain a replacement security bolt socket from a CITROËN dealer.

## CHANGING A BULB

Procedure for replacing a faulty bulb with a new bulb without the use of tools.

### Front lamps

#### Model with halogen headlamps



1. Dipped beams (H7-55 W)
2. Main beams (H1-55 W)
3. Sidelamps (H6 W-6 W)
4. Direction indicators (H21-21 W)

In some climatic conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.



The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not direct at the lamps or their outlines for too long, so as not to damage their coating and their seals.
- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

Changing a halogen bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

#### Dipped beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
- ☞ Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder by pushing it in, tightening it by a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Refit the rubber cover.

## Main beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
- ☞ Detach the clips by lowering them on each side of the bulb.
- ☞ Pull on the bulb-holder to remove it.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Push the bulb-holder back into its housing.
- ☞ Reattach the clips.
- ☞ Refit the rubber cover.

## Sidelamps



- ☞ Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Rotate it a quarter turn clockwise to reposition in its housing.

## Direction indicators



- The direction indicator bulb is located underneath the main beam bulb.
- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
  - ☞ Pull on the bulb-holder to remove it.
  - ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
  - ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder in the bracket and push it in.
  - ☞ Refit the rubber cover.

## Integrated direction indicator side repeaters



To change the repeater, press downwards firmly on the zone indicated by the arrow, then pull the repeater. Repeaters can be obtained from a CITROËN dealer.

## Model with Xenon headlamps and directional headlamps



1. **Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main beam)**
2. **Additional main beams (H7-55 W)**
3. **Sidelamps (H6 W-6 W)**  
(see previous page)
4. **Direction indicators (H21-21 W)**  
(see previous page)

## Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main beam)



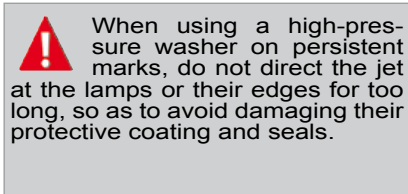
If the headlamp bears this symbol, any operation to change the Xenon dual-function directional headlamp (D1S-35 W) must be carried out by professionals (risk of electrocution).

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

It is recommended to change both bulbs at the same time if one of them is faulty.

### Additional main beams

- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
- ☞ Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder by pushing it in, tightening it by a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Refit the rubber cover.



When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not direct the jet at the lamps or their edges for too long, so as to avoid damaging their protective coating and seals.

## Front foglamps (H11-55 W)



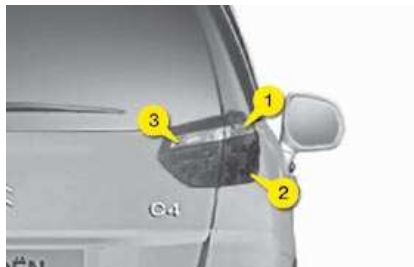
- ☞ Insert the key in the notch **A**, tilting the bulb-holder cover, located underneath the bumper, then insert the key in the notch **B** to remove it.
- ☞ Undo the lamp.
- ☞ Tilt the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Do up the lamp and refit the bulb-holder cover firmly in place.

## Rear foglamp (P21 W)



- ☞ Pass your hand underneath the bumper to reach the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn.
- ☞ Pull on the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Rotate the bulb a quarter turn to remove it.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Fit the bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder by rotating it a quarter turn.

## Rear lamps (C4 Picasso)



1. **Direction indicators (PY 21 W)**
2. **Stoplamps/sidelamps (P21/5 W)**
3. **Reversing lamp (P21 W)**

## Lamps mounted on the bodywork



- ☞ Identify the faulty bulb.
- ☞ With the boot open, press on the plastic cover **A**, located close to the lens, to release it from its housing.
- ☞ Undo the two screws **B** on the side of the lens and detach the lamp by pulling it rearwards.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector linking the lens unit with the tailgate.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Replace the bulbs.  
To remove a bulb, rotate it a quarter turn.  
To refit the bulb, rotate it a quarter turn in the other direction.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Reconnect the connector to the lens unit.

- ☞ Refit the lamp unit on the body and do up the two screws.
- ☞ Reposition the plastic cover by pressing on it.

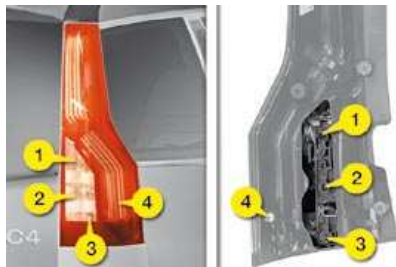
## Lamps mounted on the tailgate



- ☞ Identify the faulty bulb.
- ☞ With the boot open, remove the plastic cover on the tailgate.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder from its housing.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.  
To remove a bulb, rotate it a quarter turn.  
To refit the bulb, rotate it a quarter turn in the other direction.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover.



## Rear lamps (Grand C4 Picasso)



1. **Direction indicators (PY 21 W)**
2. **Stoplamps (P21 W)**
3. **Reversing lamp (P21 W)**
4. **Sidelamps (diodes)**

For this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer.

## Changing bulbs

- ☞ Identify the faulty bulb.
- ☞ With the tailgate open, undo the 3 screws located on the side of the lens unit and pull it rearwards to detach.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector linking the lens unit to the boot. Do not disconnect the diodes.
- ☞ Remove the seal.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Replace the bulbs.  
To remove a bulb, rotate it a quarter turn.  
To fit the bulb, rotate it a quarter turn in the other direction.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Refit the seal.
- ☞ Reconnect the connector to the lens unit.
- ☞ Arrange the harness in the opening provided in the body.
- ☞ Refit the lens unit to the body and fit and tighten the 3 screws.

## Number plate lamps (W 5 W)



- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the external holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

## Third brake lamp with bulb (W 5 W)

- ☞ With the boot open, detach the interior trim.
- ☞ Undo the nuts.
- ☞ Using a thin screwdriver, detach the 3 retaining lugs.
- ☞ Remove the lamp via the exterior of the tailgate.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb(s).

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

## Third brake lamp (diodes)



For the replacement of this type of diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer.

## Interior lighting



### Interior lamp (1/W 5 W)

Detach the cover of the interior lamp **1** with a thin screwdriver, close to the button, to access the faulty bulb.

### Map reading lamps (2/W 5 W)

Detach the cover of the interior lamp. To access the faulty bulb, detach the partition for the reading lamp **2** concerned, as necessary.

## Boot lamps (W 5 W)



Detach the unit by pushing it rearwards.

## Torch (Krypton 3.6 V)



- ☞ Open the tab.
- ☞ Push with a flat screwdriver in the hole under the tab and recover the bulb unit.
- ☞ Open the bulb unit fully to change the bulb.

## Third brake lamp with bulb (W 5 W)

- ☞ With the boot open, detach the interior trim.
- ☞ Undo the nuts.
- ☞ Using a thin screwdriver, detach the 3 retaining lugs.
- ☞ Remove the lamp via the exterior of the tailgate.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb(s).

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

## Third brake lamp (diodes)



For the replacement of this type of diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer.

## Interior lighting



### Interior lamp (1/W 5 W)

Detach the cover of the interior lamp **1** with a thin screwdriver, close to the button, to access the faulty bulb.

### Map reading lamps (2/W 5 W)

Detach the cover of the interior lamp. To access the faulty bulb, detach the partition for the reading lamp **2** concerned, as necessary.

## Boot lamps (W 5 W)



Detach the unit by pushing it rearwards.

## Torch (Krypton 3.6 V)



- ☞ Open the tab.
- ☞ Push with a flat screwdriver in the hole under the tab and recover the bulb unit.
- ☞ Open the bulb unit fully to change the bulb.

## CHANGING A FUSE

Procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

There are two fuseboxes under the dashboard, one fusebox in the engine compartment and another on the battery.

### Changing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, it is essential to find the cause of the incident and to have it rectified. The fuse identification numbers are indicated inside the fusebox.

Replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating (the same colour).

Use the special tool **A** that is provided in the fuse housing flap, which also contains spare fuses.

**Correct**



**Incorrect**



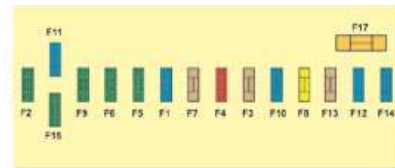
**Tool A**



**Access to the first dashboard fusebox**



## Fuses under the dashboard



Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with either standard or optional equipment.

Before installing electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN declines all responsibility for the consequences and costs that are caused by faults or repairs on your vehicle resulting from the installation of accessories that are not supplied and/or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed according to its instructions, particularly when the energy consumption of all of the additional accessories connected exceeds 10 milliamperes (Ma).

## CHANGING A FUSE

Procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

There are two fuseboxes under the dashboard, one fusebox in the engine compartment and another on the battery.

### Changing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, it is essential to find the cause of the incident and to have it rectified. The fuse identification numbers are indicated inside the fusebox.

Replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating (the same colour).

Use the special tool **A** that is provided in the fuse housing flap, which also contains spare fuses.

**Correct**



**Incorrect**



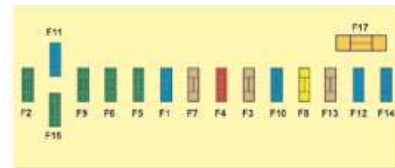
**Tool A**



**Access to the first dashboard fusebox**



## Fuses under the dashboard



Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with either standard or optional equipment.

Before installing electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN declines all responsibility for the consequences and costs that are caused by faults or repairs on your vehicle resulting from the installation of accessories that are not supplied and/or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed according to its instructions, particularly when the energy consumption of all of the additional accessories connected exceeds 10 milliamperes (Ma).

## Fuses under the dashboard



### Access to the fuses

- Undo the screw by a quarter turn and pivot the housing.

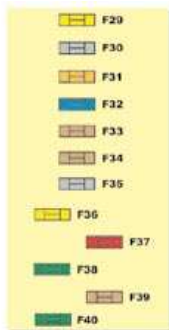
## Table of fuses

| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions  |
|---------|--------|--|
| F1      | 15 A   | Rear screen wipe   |
| F2      | 30 A   | Locking and unlocking earth  |
| F3      | 5 A    | Airbags and pretensioners  |
| F4      | 10 A   | Multimedia, photochromic rear view mirror, particle filter, diagnostic socket, air conditioning, manual headlamp height adjustment         |
| F5      | 30 A   | Front windows, front door electronics control panel, panoramic glass roof  |
| F6      | 30 A   | Rear windows   |
| F7      | 5 A    | Interior lamps, refrigerated glovebox, radio   |
| F8      | 20 A   | Multifunction screen, radio, steering wheel controls, multimedia, deflation detection, alarm, trailer                                      |
| F9      | 30 A   | Multimedia, front 12 V sockets, torch, radio   |
| F10     | 15 A   | Height corrector (suspension)  |
| F11     | 15 A   | Brake switch, ignition switch  |
| F12     | 15 A   | Parking assistance, automatic screen wipe and lighting, passenger's electric seat, lane departure warning system, Hi-Fi amplifier, trailer |
| F13     | 5 A    | Engine relay unit (BSM), driver's electric seat  |
| F14     | 15 A   | Air conditioning, Bluetooth® hands-free kit, automatic gearbox lever, airbags, instrument panel  |
| F15     | 30 A   | Locking and unlocking  |
| F16     | -      | SHUNT  |
| F17     | 40 A   | Heated rear screen   |

## Access to the second dashboard fusebox



After any operation on the fuses in the fusebox, check that the fusebox cover is refitted correctly for their protection.



## Table of fuses

| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions   |
|---------|--------|---|
| F29     | 20 A   | Heated seats  |
| F30     | -      | Not used  |
| F31     | 40 A   | Trailer relay unit  |
| F32     | 15 A   | Rear 12 V socket  |
| F33     | 5 A    | Parking assistance, automatic screen wipe and lighting, passenger's electric seat, lane departure warning system, Hi-Fi amplifier |
| F34     | 5 A    | Trailer   |
| F35     | -      | Not used  |
| F36     | 20 A   | Hi-Fi amplifier   |
| F37     | 10 A   | Air conditioning, lighting pack   |
| F38     | 30 A   | Driver's electric seat  |
| F39     | 5 A    | Fuel flap   |
| F40     | 30 A   | Passenger's electric seat, panoramic glass roof   |

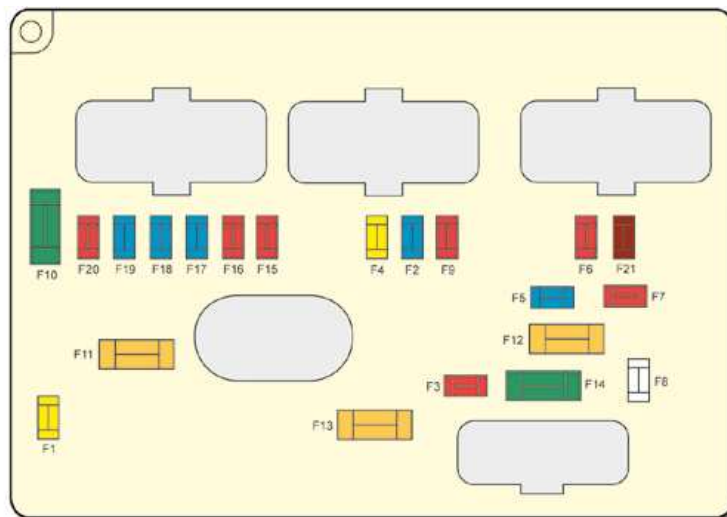
## Fuses in the engine compartment



### Access to the fuses

☞ Detach and remove the cover.

**After any operation, carefully refit the cover. If the cover is not correctly positioned or not properly closed, this could cause serious problems on your vehicle. For the same reason, take care not to spill any liquid in the fusebox.**



XI

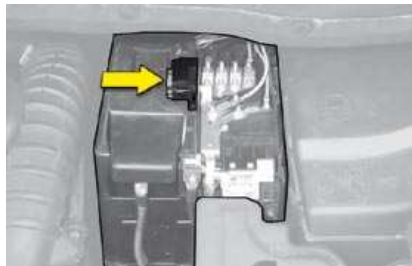
**!** All work on the maxi-fuses, which are located in these fuseboxes and which give extra protection, must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer.



**Table of fuses**

| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions   |
|---------|--------|---|
| F1      | 20 A   | Engine management   |
| F2      | 15 A   | Horn  |
| F3      | 10 A   | Screen wash pump  |
| F4      | 20 A   | Headlamp wash pump  |
| F5      | 15 A   | Engine components   |
| F6      | 10 A   | Xenon dual-function directional headlamps, automatic headlamp height adjustment, clutch switch, protection switch box (BCP) |
| F7      | 10 A   | Automatic gearbox, engine coolant level switch, power steering  |
| F8      | 25 A   | Starter motor   |
| F9      | 10 A   | Stop lamp switch  |
| F10     | 30 A   | Engine components   |
| F11     | 40 A   | Rear blower   |
| F12     | 30 A   | Screen wipe   |
| F13     | 40 A   | Built-in Systems Interface (BSI)  |
| F14     | 30 A   | Air pump, heat exchange saver   |
| F15     | 10 A   | Right-hand main beam  |
| F16     | 10 A   | Left-hand main beam   |
| F17     | 15 A   | Left-hand dipped beam   |
| F18     | 15 A   | Right-hand dipped beam  |
| F19     | 15 A   | Engine components   |
| F20     | 10 A   | Engine components   |
| F21     | 5 A    | Cooling fan relay   |

## Fuses on the battery

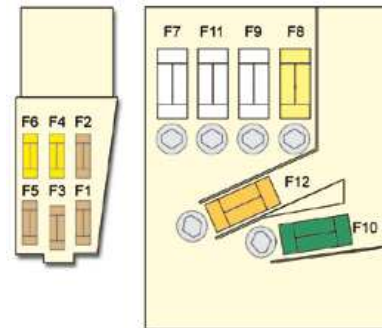


### Access to the fuses

☞ Detach and remove the cover.

Fuses **F1** to **F6** are located on the small board, clipped vertically on the battery fusebox.

After any operation, carefully refit the cover. If the cover is not correctly positioned or not properly closed, this could cause serious problems on your vehicle. For the same reason, take care not to spill any liquid in the fusebox.



Fuses **F7** to **F12** are mid-fuses. All work on these fuses must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer.

### Table of fuses

| Fuse N°   | Rating      | Functions  |
|-----------|-------------|--|
| <b>F1</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | Automatic gearbox actuator                           |
| <b>F2</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | Stop switch  |
| <b>F3</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | Battery charge estimation ECU                        |
| <b>F4</b> | <b>20 A</b> | ESP supply   |
| <b>F5</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | ESP supply   |
| <b>F6</b> | <b>20 A</b> | ECU for 6-speed electronic gearbox/automatic gearbox |

## BATTERY

Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery.

### Access to the battery

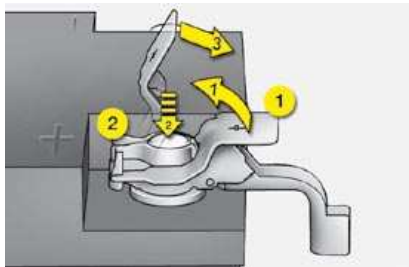
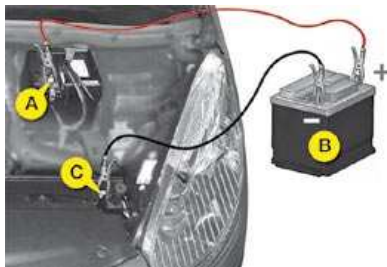
The battery is located under the bonnet.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior lever,
- ☞ secure the bonnet strut,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover to gain access to the two terminals,
- ☞ unclip the fuse box to remove the battery, if necessary.

### Disconnecting/Reconnecting the cables

- ☞ Raise the locking plate **1** fully.
- ☞ Position the open clip of the cable on the positive (+) terminal of the battery.
- ☞ Press vertically on the clip **2** to position it correctly against the battery.
- ☞ Lock the clip by lowering the plate **1**.



Do not force the plate as locking will not be possible if the clip is positioned incorrectly.  
Start the procedure again.

### Starting using another battery

- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B**.
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to an earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Operate the starter, let the engine run.
- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

### Charging the battery using a battery charger

- ☞ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- ☞ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Reconnect starting with the negative terminal (-).
- ☞ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.



The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.



Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if it is fitted with a 6-speed electronic gearbox system.

XI

## Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

## Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if slight difficulties are encountered following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the one-touch electric windows,
- the glass panoramic roof shutter,
- the settings of the multifunction screen,
- the audio equipment radio stations,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.

## ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

## Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears on the multi-function screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with your Audio system hands-free kit,
- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with the NaviDrive, then it will transfer to your telephone depending on its model.

## Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.



A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).



The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.



Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if it is fitted with a 6-speed electronic gearbox system.

**XI**

## Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

## Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if slight difficulties are encountered following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the one-touch electric windows,
- the glass panoramic roof shutter,
- the settings of the multifunction screen,
- the audio equipment radio stations,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.

## ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

## Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears on the multi-function screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with your Audio system hands-free kit,
- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with the NaviDrive, then it will transfer to your telephone depending on its model.

## Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.



A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).

## TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

### Access to the tools



According to equipment, the towing eye is installed in the storage flap under the second row passenger footwell or under the boot floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open one of the rear doors or the boot (according to equipment),
- ☞ open the flap or raise the floor (according to equipment),
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

## Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top left and pulling at the right.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom and pulling at the top.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

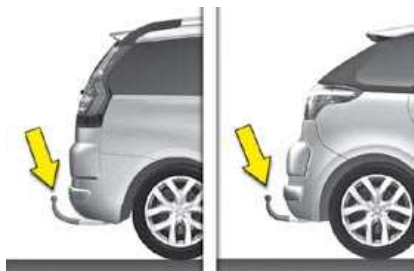
When towing with all four wheels on the ground, always use a towing bar.

When towing with only two wheels on the ground, always use professional lifting equipment.

When towing with the engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.

## TOWING A TRAILER, A CARAVAN, ETC.

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or caravan with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer.

If the trailer is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted using the electrical pre-equipment installed at the rear of the vehicle, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer subjects the towing vehicle to more significant stress and its driver must be particularly careful.

### Driving advice

#### Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towing load must be reduced by 10 % and so on for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towing loads which apply to your vehicle.

#### Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

#### Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towing load on a long slope depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

### Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

### Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking assistance will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.


## ROOF BARS

The design of your vehicle, for your safety and to avoid damage to the roof and tailgate, requires the use of roof bars and roof boxes that are tested and approved by CITROËN.

Regardless of the type of loading equipment to be transported on the roof (roof box, bicycle carrier, ski carrier...), it is imperative that you add transverse roof bars.

## Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute your load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and signal if any part of it is overhanging.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be altered).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

 Maximum load that can be distributed on the roof bars (for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm; except bicycle carrier): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt your speed to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Please refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations concerning the transportation of objects which are longer than the vehicle.

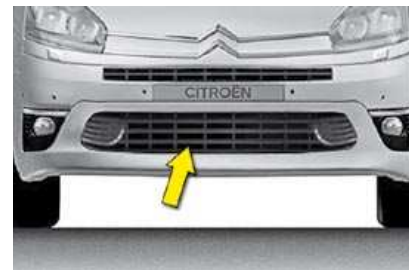
## Bicycle carrier

Do not attach a bicycle carrier with straps to the following vehicle versions:

- C4 Picasso 5-seater (all versions);
- C4 Picasso 7-seater version with opening rear screen.

## VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN\*

Removable device which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



## Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press on its periphery to clip its fixing clips one by one.

## Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to unclip each fixing clip in turn.

Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the outside temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds higher than 75 mph (120 km/h).

\* According to country.





Depending on the country in which the vehicle is sold, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety jacket, warning triangle and spare bulbs available in the vehicle.

## ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is offered by the CITROËN dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

This product range is structured around 5 categories:


**"Protection":** anti-theft alarm, wheel anti-theft devices, stolen vehicle tracking system, breathalyser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility safety jacket, dog guard, snow chains, non-skid covers, foglamps kit, temporary puncture repair kit, rear parking assistance...

**"Comfort and leisure":** mats\*, boot tray, boot carpet, sun blinds, mini-bar, fragrance cartridges, roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars, child seats and booster cushions...

**"Navigation and communication":** Bluetooth® hands-free kit, audio equipment, portable satellite navigation system, DVD player, auxiliary cable for connecting a portable MP3 player, USB Box, speakers...

**"Personalisation":** seat covers, alloy wheels, wheel trims, mud flaps, sill protectors...

**"Accessories":** windscreen wash fluid, interior and exterior cleaning and maintenance products, body-work touch-up aerosol and pen...

 The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excess consumption. Please note this specific warning. You are advised to contact a CITROËN representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

\* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

# TECHNICAL DATA

| <b>MODELS:</b>                            | <b>ENGINES AND GEARBOXES</b>        |  |                                     |                           |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Model codes:<br/>UA... UE... UD...</b> | <b>5FW-C</b>                        | <b>5FX-H/P</b>                         | <b>5FT-F</b>                        | <b>RFJ-F</b>              |
| <b>PETROL ENGINES</b>                     | <b>1.6 litre VTi 16V<br/>120 hp</b> | <b>1.6 litre THP 16V<br/>150 hp</b>    | <b>1.6 litre THP 16V<br/>140 hp</b> | <b>2 litre 16V 143 hp</b> |
| Cubic capacity (cc)                       | 1 598                               | 1 598                                  | 1 598                               | 1 997                     |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                        | 77 x 85.8                           | 77 x 85.8                              | 77 x 85.8                           | 85 x 88                   |
| EU standard maximum power (kW)            | 88                                  | 110                                    | 103                                 | 103                       |
| Maximum power engine speed (rpm)          | 6 000                               | 5 800                                  | 6 000                               | 6 000                     |
| EU standard maximum torque (Nm)           | 160                                 | 240                                    | 200                                 | 200                       |
| Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)         | 4 250                               | 1 400                                  | 4 000                               | 4 000                     |
| Fuel                                      | Unleaded                            | Unleaded                               | Unleaded                            | Unleaded                  |
| Catalytic converter                       | Yes                                 | Yes                                    | Yes                                 | Yes                       |
| <b>GEARBOXES</b>                          | Manual<br>(5-speed)                 | Electronic gearbox system<br>(6-speed) | Auto.<br>(4-speed)                  | Auto.<br>(4-speed)        |
| <b>OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)</b>         |                                     |  |                                     |                           |
| Engine (with filter replacement)          | 4.25                                | 4.25                                   | 4.25                                | 5                         |
| Gearbox - Final drive                     | 1.9                                 | -                                      | -                                   | -                         |

**UA...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso  
(7-seat).

**UE...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso  
(5-seat).

**UD...:** CITROËN C4 Picasso  
(5-seat).

# TECHNICAL DATA

| MODELS:                           | ENGINES AND GEARBOXES       |  |                           |                    |  |                           |                           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------|--------------------|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Model codes:<br>UA... UE... UD... | 9HZ-C                       | 9HZ-H/P                                      | RHR-H                     | RHJ-H/P            | RHR-J  | RHE-8                     | RHH-A                     |
| <b>DIESEL ENGINES</b>             | <b>1.6 litre HDi 110 hp</b> |  | <b>2 litre HDi 138 hp</b> |                    |  | <b>2 litre HDi 150 hp</b> | <b>2 litre HDi 163 hp</b> |
| Cubic capacity (cc)               | 1 560                       |  | 1 997                     |                    |  | 1 997                     | 1 997                     |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                | 75 x 88.3                   |  | 85 x 88                   |                    |  | 85 x 88                   | 85 x 88                   |
| EU standard maximum power (kW)    | 80                          |  | 100                       |                    |  | 110                       | 120                       |
| Maximum power engine speed (rpm)  | 4 000                       |  | 4 000                     |                    |  | 3 750                     | 3 750                     |
| EU standard maximum torque (Nm)   | 240                         |  | 320                       | 270                | 320  | -                         | -                         |
| Maximum torque engine speed (rpm) | 1 750                       |  | 2 000                     |                    |  | -                         | -                         |
| Fuel                              | Diesel                      |  | Diesel                    |                    |  | Diesel                    | Diesel                    |
| Catalytic converter               | Yes                         |  | Yes                       |                    |  | Yes                       | Yes                       |
| Particle emission filter (PEF)    | Yes                         |  | Yes                       |                    |  | Yes                       | Yes                       |
| <b>GEARBOXES</b>                  | Manual<br>(5-speed)         | Electronic<br>gearbox<br>system<br>(6-speed) | Manual<br>(6-speed)       | Auto.<br>(6-speed) | Electronic<br>gearbox<br>system<br>(6-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed)       | Auto.<br>(6-speed)        |
| <b>OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)</b> |                             |  |                           |                    |  |                           |                           |
| Engine (with filter replacement)  | 3.75                        | 3.75   | 5.25                      | 5.25               | 5.25   | -                         | -                         |
| Gearbox - Final drive             | 1.9                         | -  | 2.4                       | -                  | -  | -                         | -                         |

**UA...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso  
(7-seat).

**UE...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso  
(5-seat).

**UD...:** CITROËN C4 Picasso  
(5-seat).

# TECHNICAL DATA

| FUEL CONSUMPTION<br>CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso and<br>CITROËN C4 Picasso |                           |                                      | In accordance with directive 80/1268/CEE |                                 |                              |                                  |
|--|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Petrol engines   | Gearboxes                 | Model codes:<br>UA... UE...<br>UD... | Urban litres/100 km (mpg)                | Extra-urban litres/100 km (mpg) | Combined litres/100 km (mpg) | CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions (g/km) |
| 1.6 litre VTi 16V<br>120 hp  | Manual                    | 5FW-C                                | 10.1 (28.0)                              | 6.0 (47.1)                      | 7.5 (37.7)                   | 177                              |
| 1.6 litre THP 16V<br>150 hp  | Electronic gearbox system | 5FX-H/P                              | 10.0 (28.2)                              | 5.9 (47.9)                      | 7.4 (38.2)                   | 176                              |
| 1.6 litre THP 16V<br>140 hp  | Auto.                     | 5FT-F                                | 11.9 (23.7)                              | 6.5 (43.5)                      | 8.5 (33.2)                   | 200                              |
| 2 litre 16V<br>143 hp  | Auto.                     | RFJ-F                                | 12.9 (21.9)                              | 6.6 (42.8)                      | 8.9 (31.7)                   | 211                              |

The fuel consumption figures shown here correspond to the values communicated at the time of printing. These fuel consumption values were established in accordance with Directive 80/1268/CEE. They may vary depending on the style of driving, traffic conditions, weather conditions, the load in the vehicle, the maintenance of the vehicle and the use of equipment.

# TECHNICAL DATA

| FUEL CONSUMPTION<br>CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso<br>and CITROËN C4 Picasso |                              |                                      | In accordance with directive 80/1268/CEE |                                       |                                    |                                     |
|--|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Diesel engines   | Gearboxes                    | Model codes:<br>UA... UE...<br>UD... | Urban<br>litres/100 km<br>(mpg)          | Extra-urban<br>litres/100 km<br>(mpg) | Combined<br>litres/100 km<br>(mpg) | CO <sub>2</sub> emissions<br>(g/km) |
| 1.6 litre<br>HDi 110 hp  | Manual                       | 9HZ-C                                | 7.3 (38.7)                               | 5.1 (55.4)                            | 5.9 (47.9)                         | 155                                 |
|  | Electronic<br>gearbox system | 9HZ-H/P                              | 6.8 (41.5)                               | 5.1 (55.4)                            | 5.7 (49.6)                         | 150                                 |
| 2 litre HDi 136 hp   | Manual                       | RHR-H                                | 8.1 (34.9)                               | 5.1 (55.4)                            | 6.2 (45.6)                         | 162                                 |
|  | Auto.                        | RHR-J                                | 9.9 (28.5)                               | 5.9 (47.9)                            | 7.4 (38.2)                         | 195                                 |
|  | Electronic<br>gearbox system | RHJ-H/P                              | 7.7 (36.7)                               | 5.0 (56.5)                            | 6.0 (47.1)                         | 158                                 |
| 2 litre HDi 150 hp   | Manual                       | RHE-8                                | 7.5 (37.7)                               | 4.9 (57.6)                            | 5.9 (47.9)                         | 154                                 |
| 2 litre HDi 163 hp   | Auto.                        | RHH-A                                | 8.7 (32.5)                               | 5.7 (49.6)                            | 6.8 (41.5)                         | 177                                 |

## XII

The fuel consumption figures shown here correspond to the values communicated at the time of printing.

These fuel consumption values were established in accordance with Directive 80/1268/CEE. They may vary depending on the style of driving, traffic conditions, weather conditions, the load in the vehicle, the maintenance of the vehicle and the use of the equipment.

# TECHNICAL DATA

| WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)                         |                          |                           |                          |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Petrol engines  | 1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp | 1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp  | 1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp |
| Gearboxes   | Manual                   | Electronic gearbox system | Auto.                    |
| Model codes:<br>UA... UE... UD...                       | 5FW-C                    | 5FX-H/P                   | 5FT-F                    |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 486 - 1 467 - 1 458    | 1 530 - 1 521 - 1 506     | 1 568 - 1 572 - 1 539    |
| - Kerb weight   | 1 561 - 1 542 - 1 533    | 1 605 - 1 596 - 1 581     | 1 643 - 1 647 - 1 614    |
| - Payload   | 714 - 648 - 557          | 690 - 539 - 534           | 667 - 513 - 516          |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                            | 2 200 - 2 115 - 2 015    | 2 220 - 2 060 - 2 040     | 2 235 - 2 085 - 2 055    |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)                              |                          |                           |                          |
| on a 12 % gradient                                      | 3 400 - 3 515 - 3 415    | 3 420 - 3 460 - 3 440     | 3 635 - 3 585 - 3 555    |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)                     |                          |                           |                          |
| on a 10 % or 12 % gradient                              | 1 200 - 1 400 - 1 400    | 1 200 - 1 400 - 1 400     | 1 400 - 1 500 - 1 500    |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 500                    | 1 500                     | 1 500                    |
| - Unbraked trailer                                      | 750                      | 750                       | 750                      |
| - Recommended nose weight                               | 60                       | 60                        | 60                       |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country). High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

# TECHNICAL DATA

| WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)                                   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| <b>Petrol engines</b>   | <b>2 litre 16V 143 hp</b> |
| <b>Gearboxes</b>  | <b>Auto.</b>              |
| <b>Model codes:<br/>UA... UE... UD...</b>                         | <b>RFJ-F</b>              |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 600 - 1 556 - 1 552     |
| - Kerb weight   | 1 675 - 1 631 - 1 627     |
| - Payload   | 660 - 514 - 538           |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                      | 2 260 - 2 070 - 2 090     |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient                  | 3 660 - 3 570 - 3 590     |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 10 % or 12 % gradient | 1 400 - 1 500 - 1 500     |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)           | 1 500                     |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 750                       |
| - Recommended nose weight   | 60                        |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

# TECHNICAL DATA

| WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)                         |                       |                           |
|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Diesel engines  | 1.6 litre HDi 110 hp  |                           |
| Gearboxes   | Manual                | Electronic gearbox system |
| Model codes:<br>UA... UE... UD...                       | 9HZ-C                 | 9HZ-H/P                   |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 530 - 1 484 - 1 489 | 1 539 - 1 494 - 1 499     |
| - Kerb weight   | 1 605 - 1 559 - 1 564 | 1 614 - 1 569 - 1 574     |
| - Payload   | 720 - 546 - 561       | 711 - 536 - 561           |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                            | 2 250 - 2 030 - 2 050 | 2 250 - 2 030 - 2 060     |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)                              |                       |                           |
| on a 12 % gradient                                      | 3 130                 | 3 130                     |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)                     |                       |                           |
| on a 10 % or 12 % gradient                              | 880 - 1 100 - 1 080   | 880 - 1 100 - 1 070       |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit) | 1 180 - 1 300 - 1 300 | 1 180 - 1 300 - 1 300     |
| - Unbraked trailer                                      | 750                   | 750                       |
| - Recommended nose weight                               | 50 - 60 - 60          | 50 - 60 - 60              |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 62 mph (approx 100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.



# TECHNICAL DATA

| WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)                       |                       |                           |                       |
|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Diesel engines  | 2 litre HDi 136 hp    |                           |                       |
| Gearboxes   | Manual                | Electronic gearbox system | Auto.                 |
| Model codes:<br>UA... UE... UD...                     | RHR-H                 | RHJ-H/P                   | RHR-J                 |
| - Unladen weight                                      | 1 613 - 1 580 - 1 610 | 1 620 - 1 582 - 1 581     | 1 650 - 1 611 - 1 640 |
| - Kerb weight   | 1 688 - 1 655 - 1 685 | 1 695 - 1 657 - 1 656     | 1 725 - 1 686 - 1 715 |
| - Payload   | 695 - 685 - 520       | 700 - 558 - 559           | 700 - 559 - 510       |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                          | 2 308 - 2 265 - 2 130 | 2 320 - 2 140 - 2 140     | 2 350 - 2 170 - 2 150 |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)                            |                       |                           |                       |
| on a 12 % gradient                                    | 3 508 - 3 515 - 3 530 | 3 620 - 3 590 - 3 540     | 3 550 - 3 520 - 3 550 |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)                   |                       |                           |                       |
| on a 10 % or 12 % gradient                            | 1 200 - 1 250 - 1 400 | 1 300 - 1 450 - 1 400     | 1 200 - 1 350 - 1 400 |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer with GTW limit) | 1 400 - 1 500 - 1 600 | 1 500                     | 1 500                 |
| - Unbraked trailer                                    | 750                   | 750                       | 750                   |
| - Recommended nose weight                             | 70                    | 70 - 60 - 60              | 70 - 60 - 60          |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

# TECHNICAL DATA

| WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)                                |                       |                       |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Diesel engines   | 2 litre HDi 150 hp    | 2 litre HDi 163 hp    |
| Gearbox  | Manual                | Auto.                 |
| Type codes:<br>UA... UE... UD...                               | RHE-8                 | RHH-A                 |
| - Unladen weight   | 1 613 - 1 580 - 1 610 | 1 637 - 1 601 - 1 614 |
| - Kerb weight  | 1 688 - 1 650 - 1 685 | 1 712 - 1 676 - 1 689 |
| - Payload  | 695 - 685 - 520       | 688 - 689 - 536       |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                   | 2 308 - 2 265 - 2 130 | 2 325 - 2 290 - 2 150 |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient               | 3 508 - 3 515 - 3 530 | 3 525 - 3 490 - 3 550 |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 10 % or 12 % slope | 1 200 - 1 250 - 1 400 | 1 200 - 1 200 - 1 400 |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer with GTW limit)          | 1 400 - 1 500 - 1 600 | 1 500                 |
| - Unbraked trailer   | 750                   | 750                   |
| - Recommended nose weight                                      | 70                    | 60                    |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

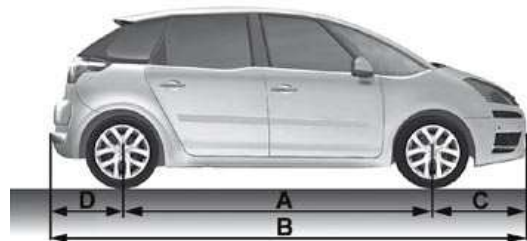
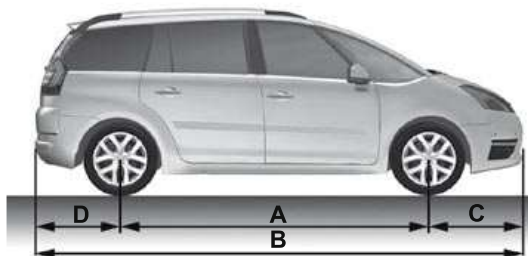
The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 62 mph (approx 100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country). High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

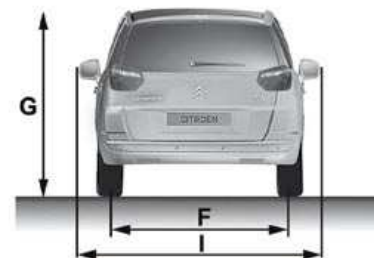
# TECHNICAL DATA

## DIMENSIONS (IN METRES)

Exterior (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso and CITROËN C4 Picasso)

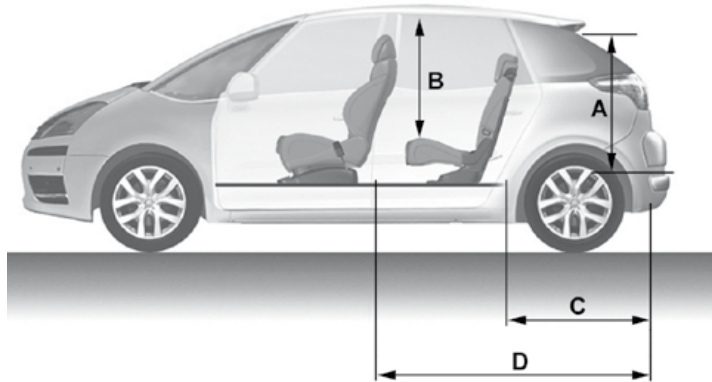


|           | CITROËN<br>Grand C4 Picasso | CITROËN<br>C4 Picasso |
|-----------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>A</b>  | 2.730                       | 2.730                 |
| <b>B</b>  | 4.590                       | 4.470                 |
| <b>C</b>  | 0.990                       | 0.990                 |
| <b>D</b>  | 0.870                       | 0.750                 |
| <b>E</b>  | 1.510                       | 1.510                 |
| <b>F</b>  | 1.540                       | 1.540                 |
| <b>G*</b> | 1.660 to 1.710              | 1.660 to 1.680        |
| <b>H</b>  | 2.100                       | 2.100                 |
| <b>I</b>  | 1.830                       | 1.830                 |



\* Depending on suspensions and roof bars.

## Interior (CITROËN C4 Picasso)

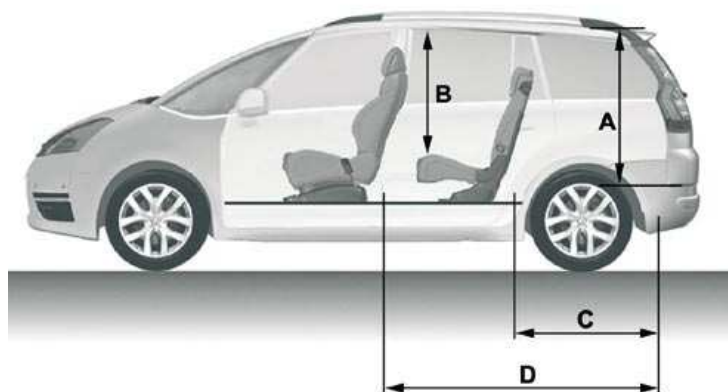


|          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| <b>A</b> | 0.930       |
| <b>B</b> | 0.960/0.980 |
| <b>C</b> | 0.880/1.000 |
| <b>D</b> | 1.610/1.870 |



|          |       |
|----------|-------|
| <b>E</b> | 0.930 |
| <b>F</b> | 1.140 |
| <b>G</b> | 1.120 |
| <b>H</b> | 1.170 |

## Interior (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)



|          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| <b>A</b> | 0.920       |
| <b>B</b> | 0.990/1.000 |
| <b>C</b> | 1.030/1.160 |
| <b>D</b> | 1.800/2.060 |



|          |       |
|----------|-------|
| <b>E</b> | 0.880 |
| <b>F</b> | 1.070 |
| <b>G</b> | 1.160 |
| <b>H</b> | 1.170 |

## IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for identification of the vehicle.

The vehicle type and the identification number are also indicated on the registration document.

All CITROËN original replacement parts are available exclusively within the dealer network.

For your safety and in order to remain within the terms of the warranty, you are advised to use only CITROËN replacement parts

### A. Manufacturer's label

Located on the left-hand door centre pillar.

1. EU type approval number.
2. Vehicle Identification No. (VIN).
3. Gross vehicle weight.
4. Gross train weight.
5. Maximum weight on front axle.
6. Maximum weight on rear axle.

### B. Vehicle Identification No. (VIN)

Located on bodywork and behind windscreen.

### C. Paint colour code Tyre reference Tyre pressures

Located on the driver's door interior pillar.



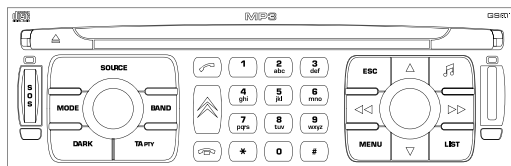
A



Use the tyre pressures recommended by CITROËN.

Check the tyre pressures when the tyres are cold, on a frequent basis. Never reduce the pressure of a hot tyre.

If replacing your tyres, it is essential to use the tyre sizes that are recommended for your vehicle.



# NaviDrive

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO EQUIPMENT/TELEPHONE  
JUKEBOX FUNCTION (10 GB)/GPS (EUROPE)



The NaviDrive is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention only while the vehicle is stationary.  
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the NaviDrive switches off after a few minutes.

## CONTENTS

- **01 First steps** p. 208
- **02 Screen and general menu** p. 209
- **03 GPS** p. 212
- **04 Traffic information** p. 221
- **05 Audio/Video** p. 223
- **06 Telephone** p. 231
- **07 Trip computer** p. 236
- **08 Steering wheel controls** p. 238
- **09 Configuration** p. 240
- **10 Screen menu map** p. 241
- **Frequently asked questions** p. 246

# 01 FIRST STEPS

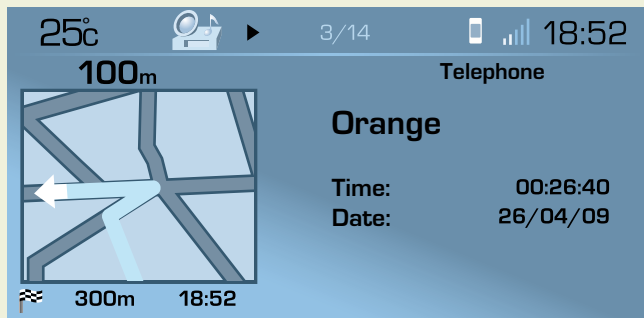


1. On/Off and Volume adjustment.
2. Selection of the source: radio, Jukebox, CD and auxiliary (AUX, if activated on the Configuration menu).  
Long press: CD copy to hard disk.
3. Audio option adjustments: front/rear, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambiances.
4. Display the list of local radio stations, of the tracks on the CD or of the MP3/USB/Jukebox directories.  
Long press: update the local radio stations.
5. Automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.  
Selection of the previous/next CD, MP3, USB or Jukebox track.  
Long press: fast forward and backward play.
6. Selection of wavebands FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.
7. TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off.  
Long press: access to the PTY (radio Programme TYpes) mode.
8. Ejection of the CD.
9. SIM card slot.
10. Keypad for entering descriptions by successive presses.
11. Access to the "CITROËN" services menu.
12. Selection and confirmation.
13. Selection of the previous/next MP3/USB/Jukebox directory.
14. Cancellation of the current operation.  
Long press: return to the current application.
15. Display the general menu.
16. Modification of the screen display.  
Long press: reinitialisation of the system.
17. Selection of the display on the screen between modes: TRIP, TEL, NAV and AUDIO.
18. Long press on the SOS button: emergency call.



# SCREEN AND GENERAL MENU 02

## > COLOUR SCREEN



This displays the following information, via the audio control panel:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (if there is a risk of ice, you are warned by a message),
- audio source displays (radio, CD, jukebox, ...),
- telematic system displays (telephone, services, ...),
- check of openings (doors, boot, ...),
- warning messages (e.g.: "Fuel level low") and vehicle function status messages (e.g.: "Auto lighting activated") displayed temporarily,
- trip computer information,
- GPS (Europe) satellite navigation system information.



Screen configuration: refer to the section - Screen menu map.



### New

The system uses the complete and detailed NAVTEQ maps installed directly on the equipment's hard disk. There is no need to keep a mapping CD in the CD player. Updates of the maps of the UK and of the other European countries, offered by our partner NAVTEQ, will be available from the CITROËN network.

## 02 DISPLAY AND GENERAL MENU

**TRAFFIC INFORMATION:**  
TMC information,  
messages.



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended with no additional product.

**MAP:**  
orientation, details, display.

**NAVIGATION GUIDANCE:**  
GPS, stages, options.

**VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS:**  
warnings log.

**VIDEO:**  
activation, settings.

**AUDIO FUNCTIONS:**  
radio, CD, Jukebox, options.

**TELEMATIC:**  
telephone, directory, SMS.

**CONFIGURATION:**  
vehicle, screen, time,  
languages, voice, auxiliary  
socket (AUX) settings.

# 02 DISPLAY AND GENERAL MENU

## DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



Press the OK dial to access short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

### NAVIGATION (IF NAVIGATION IS IN PROGRESS):

- 1 resume/stop guidance
- 1 divert route
- 1 route type
- 1 consult traffic info
- 1 zoom/scroll map

### IN "ZOOM/SCROLL" MODE:

- 1 position info
- 1 select as destination
- 1 select as stage
- 1 store this position
- 1 exit map mode
- 1 guidance option

### INTERNAL TELEPHONE:

- 1 call list
- 1 dial
- 1 phone book
- 1 voice mail

### BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE:

- 1 call list
- 1 call
- 1 phone book
- 1 private mode/hands-free mode
- 1 place call on hold/resume call

### TRIP COMPUTER:

- 1 alert log
- 1 status of functions

### CD (MP3 OR AUDIO):

- 1 copy CD to JBX/stop copy
- 1 activate/deactivate Introsca
- 1 activate/deactivate random play
- 1 activate/deactivate repeat

### RADIO:

- 1 enter a frequency
- 1 activate/deactivate RDS
- 1 activate/deactivate REG mode
- 1 hide/display "Radio Text"

### JUKEBOX:

- 1 select playlist
- 1 activate/deactivate Introsca
- 1 activate/deactivate random play
- 1 activate/deactivate repeat

### USB:

- 1 copy USB to JBX/stop copy
- 1 eject USB
- 1 activate/deactivate Introsca
- 1 activate/deactivate random play
- 1 activate/deactivate repeat

# 03 GPS



## SELECTING A DESTINATION

Tip: for a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Display flow charts" part of this section.

1



Press the MENU button.



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



2



Turn the dial and select the NAVIGATION GUIDANCE function.



6



Turn the dial and select the ENTER AN ADDRESS function.

ENTER AN ADDRESS



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



7



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the DESTINATION CHOICE function.

DESTINATION CHOICE



8



When the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the TOWN function.

TOWN



9



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



10



Turn the dial and select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.

PARIS



To speed up the process, the POST CODE can be entered instead of the name of the town. Use the alphanumeric keypad to enter the letters and digits and "\*" to correct.



11



Turn the dial and select OK.

OK



12



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



13

Repeat steps 8 to 12 for the ROAD and N° functions.

14



Select OK on the ENTER AN ADDRESS page.

OK



15



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



Select the STORE function to record the address entered in a directory record and press the dial to confirm the selection. The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports, ...).

STORE

POI

# 03 GPS



## GUIDANCE OPTIONS

The route presented depends directly on the guidance options.  
Changing these options may completely change the route.

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the NAVIGATION GUIDANCE function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the GUIDANCE OPTIONS function.

GUIDANCE OPTIONS



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Turn the dial and select the DEFINE CALCULATION CRITERIA function.

DEFINE CALCULATION CRITERIA



7



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



8



Turn the dial and select, for example, the DISTANCE/TIME function.

DISTANCE/TIME



## SETTING HAZARDOUS AREAS ALERT PARAMETERS



9



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



10



Turn the dial and select the **TRAFFIC INFO** function if you wish to receive the **TRAFFIC INFO** announcements.

TRAFFIC INFO



Tick this box for optimum operation of the traffic information, diversions will be suggested.

11



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



12



Select **OK** and press the dial to confirm.

OK



1

Repeat steps 1 to 5 of the guidance option.

2



Turn the dial and select the **SET HAZARDOUS AREAS PARAMETERS** function, then press the dial to confirm the warning message. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

SET HAZARDOUS AREAS PARAMETERS



3



Select:

- visual warnings,
- audible warnings with an announcement duration (in seconds),
- warn during guidance only, then select **OK** and press the dial to confirm.

OK



These functions are only available if the hazardous areas have been downloaded and installed on the system. The hazardous areas are, in general, fixed speed cameras, level crossings, dangerous uphill and downhill gradients. They may change on a regular basis.

# 03 GPS



## GUIDANCE SPEECH SYNTHESIS



During announcements, the volume of each speech synthesis function (guidance, traffic information...) can be adjusted directly using the volume button.

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the NAVIGATION GUIDANCE function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the GUIDANCE OPTIONS function.

GUIDANCE OPTIONS



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Select the ADJUST SPEECH SYNTHESIS function and press the dial to confirm.

ADJUST SPEECH SYNTHESIS



7



Press the dial then adjust the volume of the speech synthesis or select the DEACTIVATE function and press the dial to confirm.

DEACTIVATE



8



Select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK





# 03 GPS



## ACTIONS ON THE MAP

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the MAP function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the MAP DETAILS function. Permits selection of the services which can be seen on the map (hotels, restaurants, hazardous areas...).

MAP DETAILS



## MAP ORIENTATION



For improved visibility, beyond the scale of 6 miles (10 km), the map automatically switches to North Orientation.

5



Repeat steps 1 to 3 then turn the dial and select the MAP ORIENTATION function.

MAP ORIENTATION



6



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



7



Turn the dial and select the orientation of your choice.

VEHICLE ORIENTATION

NORTH ORIENTATION

3D VIEW



8



Select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK



# 03 GPS



## DISPLAYING THE MAP IN A WINDOW OR IN FULL SCREEN MODE



1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the MAP function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the DISPLAY MAP function.

DISPLAY MAP



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Turn the dial and select the MAP IN WINDOW or FULL SCREEN MAP tab.

MAP IN WINDOW

FULL SCREEN MAP



7



Select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK






# 03 GPS



## List of POI

-  Flying club
-  Airport
-  Lay-by
-  Bowling alley
-  Casino
-  Business park
-  Sports centre
-  Town centre
-  Cinema
-  Sports complexes
-  Culture/Museum
-  Vineyard
-  Garage

-  Station
-  Dock station
-  Bus station
-  Hospitals
-  Hotels
-  Vehicle hire
-  Town halls
-  Historical monuments
-  Tourist information
-  Theme park
-  Park/Garden
-  Park and ride
-  Car park

-  Covered parking
-  Skating rink
-  Ports
-  Restaurant
-  Shopping
-  Show/Exhibition
-  Winter sports centre
-  Service station
-  Supermarkets
-  Golf course
-  Tourism
-  University
-  Night life

# 03 GPS



## ADDING A STAGE

1



During guidance, press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the NAVIGATION GUIDANCE function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the JOURNEY LEGS AND ROUTE function.

JOURNEY LEGS AND ROUTE



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Select the ADD A STAGE function (9 stages maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

ADD A STAGE



7



Enter for example a new address.

ENTER AN ADDRESS



8



When the new address has been entered, select OK and press the dial to confirm.



9



Select OK and press the dial to confirm the order of the stages.



Select STRICT (the stage must be completed in order to continue to the next destination) or PROXIMITY then press the dial to confirm.

# 04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION



## ACTIVATING THE FILTER ON THE ROUTE

We recommend a filter on the route and a filter around the vehicle of:

- 3 miles (5 km) or 6 miles (10 km) for a region with heavy traffic,
- 12 miles (20 km) for a region with a normal level of traffic,
- 60 miles (100 km) for long journeys (motorway).

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the TRAFFIC INFORMATION function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the FILTER TRAFFIC INFORMATION function.

**FILTER TRAFFIC INFORMATION**



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.

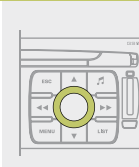


6



Select the GEOGRAPHIC FILTER function and press the dial to confirm.

**GEOGRAPHIC FILTER**



7



Turn the dial and select the filter of your choice.

**AROUND THE VEHICLE**

**ON ROUTE**

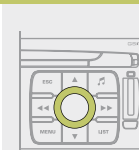


8



Select OK and press the dial to confirm.

**OK**



# 04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION



## CONFIGURING THE TMC MESSAGE ANNOUNCEMENTS

We recommend that you do not tick the NEW MESSAGE DISPLAY tab for regions with heavy traffic.

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the TRAFFIC INFORMATION function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the CONFIGURE MESSAGE ANNOUNCEMENT function.

**CONFIGURE MESSAGE ANNOUNCEMENT**



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Select the READ MESSAGES tab.

**READ MESSAGES**



The Traffic Information Messages will be read by the voice synthesiser. Select the NEW MESSAGE DISPLAY tab. The traffic information messages are extended to the filters selected (geographic...) and can also be displayed when guidance is not active.

**NEW MESSAGE DISPLAY**



7



Select OK and press the dial to confirm.

**OK**



# 05 AUDIO/VIDEO



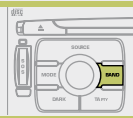
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## RADIO SELECTING A STATION

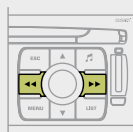
**1** Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the RADIO.



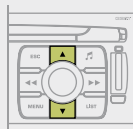
**2** Press the BAND button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.




**3** Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



**4** Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search of the radio stations.

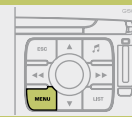


 Press the LIST button to display the list of stations received locally (60 maximum). To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



## RDS

**1** Press the MENU button.



**2** Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



**3** Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



**FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES**




**4** Select ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS) then press OK. RDS appears on the display.



**ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS)**



 The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

# 05 AUDIO/VIDEO



## MP3 CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR/DVDR or CDRW/DVDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet.  
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.  
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.  
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

## CD PLAYING A CD OR AN MP3 COMPILATION

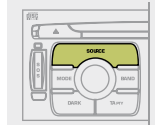


Insert circular compact discs only. Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may generate malfunctions regardless of the quality of the original player. Insert an audio CD or an MP3 compilation in the player, play begins automatically.

1



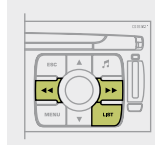
If the player already contains a disc, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD to listen to it.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.  
Press the LIST button to display the list of tracks on the CD or of the directories of the MP3 compilation.



The playing and displaying of an MP3 compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameter settings used. We recommend use of the ISO 9660 recording standard.



## JUKEBOX FUNCTION COPYING A CD ONTO THE HARD DISC

1



Insert a CD or an MP3 compilation and press the MENU button.



2



Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS and press the dial to confirm.

AUDIO FUNCTIONS



3



Select COPY CD TO JUKEBOX and press the dial to confirm.

COPY CD TO JUKEBOX



4



Select COMPLETE CD to copy the entire CD and press the dial to confirm.

COMPLETE CD



5



Select CREATE ALBUM and press the dial to confirm.

CREATE ALBUM



The AUTO CREATION tab automatically copies the CD by default into an album of the type "album n°...".

6



Select the letters one by one and select OK to confirm.

OK



The audio or MP3 CD is copied onto the hard disc. Copying may take approximately 20 minutes depending on the duration of the CD. During this copying phase, it is not possible to listen to the albums previously recorded on the hard disc or the CDs.



If it is not an MP3 CD, the Jukebox automatically compresses the CD in MP3 format. The compression may take approximately 20 minutes depending on the duration of the CD. During this compression phase, it is possible to listen to the CD or to albums previously recorded on the hard disk.





A long press on the SOURCE button starts the copying of the CD.

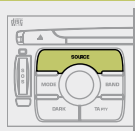
!


When copying an MP3 CD, the Jukebox only retains the last album level. It is not possible to copy files from the Jukebox to a CD. The STOP THE CD COPY action does not delete the files which have already been transferred onto the jukebox hard disk.

## JUKEBOX FUNCTION PLAYING AN MP3 USB STICK

- 1  Insert a USB stick in the space provided.

- 2  If another source is being played, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select USB to play it.




- 3  Press one of the buttons to select a track on the USB stick. Press the LIST button to display the list of folders on the MP3 USB stick.




- ! To eject the USB stick, press the MENU button, select AUDIO FUNCTIONS, USB, then select EJECT USB. The playing and displaying of an MP3 compilation may depend on the programme settings used.


## JUKEBOX FUNCTION COPYING AN MP3 USB STICK ONTO THE HARD DISK

- 1  Insert a USB stick in the space provided and press the MENU button.

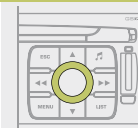



- 2  Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS and press the dial to confirm.



- 3  Select USB and press the dial to confirm.


USB



- 4  Select COPY USB TO JUKEBOX and press the dial to confirm.

COPY USB TO JUKEBOX



- 5  Select COMPLETE DISC to copy the entire USB stick and press the dial to confirm.

COMPLETE DISC



## JUKEBOX FUNCTION RENAMING AN ALBUM

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS and press the dial to confirm.



3



Select the JUKEBOX function and press the dial to confirm.

JUKEBOX



4



Select the JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT function and press the dial to confirm.

JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT



5



Select the album to be renamed and press the dial to confirm.



6



Select the RENAME tab and press the dial to confirm.

RENAME



7



Turn the dial and select the letters of the album title one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.



Use the alphanumeric keypad to enter the letters of the album title one by one.

## JUKEBOX FUNCTION LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

8



Select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK

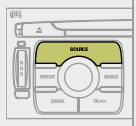


1



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the JUKEBOX function.

JUKEBOX



To rename the tracks of an album, follow the same procedure, selecting the tracks to be renamed. Use the ESC button to exit from the list of tracks.

2



Press the LIST button.



Select the DELETE function to delete an album or a track from the Jukebox.

DELETE



3



Turn the dial to select the files.



Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.

## USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK/RCA AUDIO CABLE NOT SUPPLIED



Press the MENU button then select the CONFIGURATION function, then SOUNDS, then ACTIVATE AUXILIARY SOURCE to activate the audio equipment auxiliary input.

1

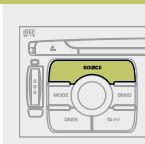
Connect the portable equipment (MP3 player...) to the JACK socket or to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) located in the glove box using a suitable cable.



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



The displaying and management of the commands takes place via the portable equipment.



It is not possible to copy the files onto the hard disk from the auxiliary input.

## VIDEO MENU

You can connect video equipment (camcorder, digital camera, DVD player...) to the three audio/video sockets, located in the glove box.

1



After connecting the video equipment, press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the VIDEO function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the **ACTIVATE VIDEO MODE** function to activate/deactivate the video.

**ACTIVATE VIDEO MODE**



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Turn the dial and select the **VIDEO PARAMETERS** function to set the display format, the brightness, the contrast and the colours.

**VIDEO PARAMETERS**



7



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



Pressing the "DARK" button disconnects display of the video.



Pressing the "SOURCE" button several times in succession permits the selection of an audio source other than that of the video.



Videos can only be displayed when stationary.

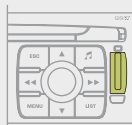
# 06 INTERNAL TELEPHONE

## INSTALLING YOUR SIM CARD (NOT SUPPLIED)

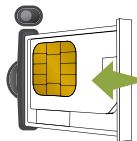
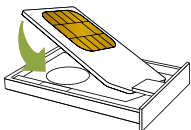
1



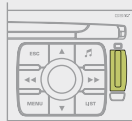
Open the slot by pressing the button using the tip of a pen.



2



Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.



3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.



!

Your SIM card must be installed and removed with the NaviDrive audio and telematics system switched off and the ignition off.

## ENTERING THE PIN CODE

1



Enter the PIN code on the keypad.

PIN CODE



2



Confirm the PIN code by pressing button #.



When entering your PIN code, tick the STORE PIN tab for access to the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

# 06 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE



## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

The services offered by the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.



For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention when the vehicle is stationary (pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free kit).

1

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function. The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2



Press the MENU button, select **TELEMATICS**, then **BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS**. Press the dial to confirm each operation.



3



Select **BLUETOOTH ACTIVATION MODE**, then **ACTIVATED AND VISIBLE**. Press the dial to confirm each operation.



To find and change the name of the CITROËN audio/telephone, repeat step 2 then select **CHANGE AUDIO/TELEPHONE NAME**.

4

On your telephone, select the name of the CITROËN audio/telephone. Enter the authentication code (0000 by default).





# 06 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE



## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE



To change the authentication code, repeat step 2 then select **AUTHENTICATION CODE** and save the code of your choice.



Once the telephone has been connected, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list. Repeat step 2 then select **PHONE BOOK SYNCHRONISATION MODE**. Select the synchronisation of your choice and press the dial to confirm. The synchronisation may take a few minutes.



To change the telephone connected, repeat step 2 then select **LIST OF MATCHED TELEPHONES** and press OK to confirm. The list of previously connected telephones (10 maximum) appears. Select the telephone of your choice, confirm, then select **CONNECT** and press the dial to confirm.



The call list consists of calls made from the vehicle's audiotelephone only.

# 06 MAKING TELEPHONE CALLS

## CALLING A CONTACT

1



Press the PICK UP button to display the telephone short-cut menu.



2



Turn the dial and select the DIAL function.

DIAL



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Dial the telephone number of your contact using the alphanumeric keypad.



To select the telephone used, press MENU, then select TELEMATICS, then BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS, then BLUETOOTH ACTIVATION MODE. Then select:

- DEACTIVATED: to use the internal telephone,
- ACTIVATED AND VISIBLE: to use the bluetooth telephone, visible to all telephones,
- ACTIVATED AND NOT VISIBLE: to use the bluetooth telephone, not visible to other telephones, it is not possible to match a new telephone.

5



Press the PICK UP button to call the number dialled.



6



Press the HANG UP button to end the call.



## ACCEPTING OR REFUSING A CALL



Press the PICK UP button to accept a call.



Press the HANG UP button to refuse a call.



You can also press and hold the steering wheel control TEL button to access the telephone menu: calls log, directory, voice mailbox.

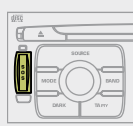


## EMERGENCY CALL

! In order for an emergency call to be made, a valid SIM card must be inserted.



In an emergency, press the SOS button until a CONFIRMATION/CANCELLATION screen is displayed. A call is made\* directly to CITROËN Emergency which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries where the call centre is not operational, or where the vehicle location service has been expressly refused, the call is directed to the national emergency services (112).



! If necessary, the internal telephone is activated automatically to make an emergency call.

\* This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a CITROËN dealer.



If the SIM card used was not supplied by CITROËN, we suggest that you check its compatibility by making a call to the CITROËN Emergency team.

## CONSULTING THE SERVICES



Press this button to gain access to the CITROËN services\*.



Select "Customer call" to request any information about the CITROËN marque.

CUSTOMER CALL



Select "CITROËN Assistance" to make a breakdown assistance call.

CITROËN ASSISTANCE



\* These services and options are subject to conditions and availability.

# 07 TRIP COMPUTER

## VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

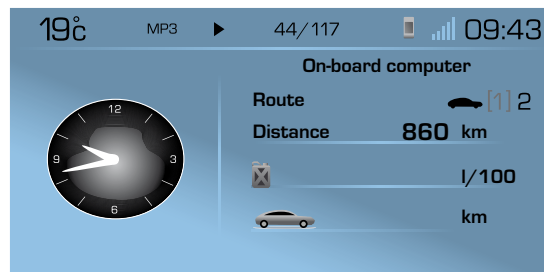


Each press of the button, located at the end of the wiper stalk, displays the different trip computer information in succession, depending on the screen.



With the "vehicle" tab:

- the range, the current fuel consumption and the distance remaining to the destination.



Zero reset

When the required route is displayed, press the button for more than two seconds.



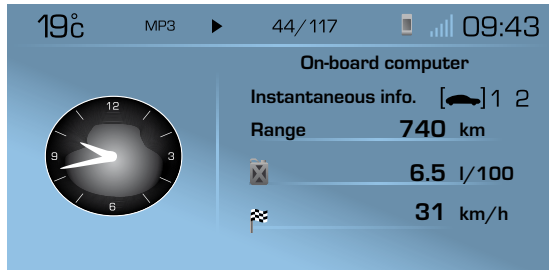
### 1 VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

### 2 WARNINGS LOG

### 2 STATUS OF FUNCTIONS

### 2 TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTOR ZERO RESET

# 07 TRIP COMPUTER



With tab "1" (trip 1):

- the average speed, the average consumption and the distance travelled calculated over trip "1".

Tab "2" (trip 2) with the same functions for a second trip.

## A few definitions

**Range:** displays the distance which can be travelled with the remaining fuel detected in the tank, based on the average consumption over the last few miles (kilometres).

This displayed value may vary significantly following a change in the vehicle speed or the relief of the route.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed as soon as it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If, whilst driving, dashes are displayed continuously in place of digits, contact a CITROËN dealer.

**Current fuel consumption:** only calculated and displayed above 20 mph (30 km/h).

**Average fuel consumption:** this is the average fuel consumption since the last trip recorder zero reset.

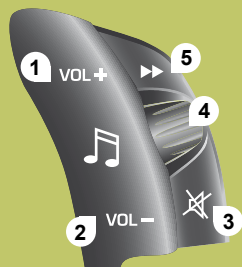
**Distance travelled:** calculated since the last trip computer zero reset.

**Distance remaining to the destination:** calculated with reference to the final destination entered by the user. If guidance is activated, the navigation system calculates it as a current value.

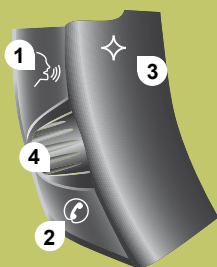
**Average speed:** this is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

# 08 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

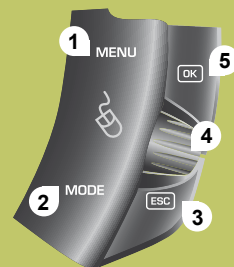
## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Mute.
4. RADIO: selection of the previous or next stored station.  
MP3/JUKEBOX: selection of the previous or next directory.
5. RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
CD/MP3/JUKEBOX: selection of the next track.  
CD/MP3: continuous press: fast forwards play.



1. Short press:  
Activation of voice recognition.
2. WHEN THE TELEPHONE IS NOT IN USE:  
Long press: access to the telephone menu (phone book, call list, ...).  
INCOMING CALL:  
Short press to accept.  
Long press to reject the call.  
CALL IN PROGRESS:  
Short press to hang up.  
Long press to access the telephone menu.
3. Personalisation:  
Short press: confirmation of the selection made using the dial.
4. Rotation:  
Move around the phone book, the call list.  
Selection of personalisation.



1. Displays the main screen.
2. Selection of the mode displayed (TRIP, TEL, NAV or AUDIO).
3. Abandon the operation in progress and return to the previous display.
4. Navigation through the menus.
5. Confirmation of the function selected.

## VOICE COMMANDS DISPLAYING THE LIST AND USING THEM



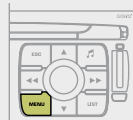
1



To display the list of available voice commands, press the voice recognition control to start the voice recognition, then say HELP or the voice recognition command.



For the same operation, press and hold the MENU button and select the function VOICE COMMANDS LIST.



VOICE COMMANDS LIST

2



Press the voice recognition control to start the voice recognition. Say the words one by one and wait for the audible confirmation signal between each word. The list which follows is exhaustive.



| LEVEL 1                                    | LEVEL 2   | LEVEL 3   |
|--|---|---|
| radio                                      | memory<br>autostore<br>previous/next<br>list  | 1 to 6/*  |
| cd player<br>Jukebox (if activated)<br>USB | previous/next track<br>track number/track<br>scan<br>random play<br><br>directory (CD-MP3 inserted)<br>list | 1 to 250/*<br>previous/next<br>repeat<br>help/what can I say/cancel |
| call/guide to                              | "Pre-recorded description"  |   |
| telephone                                  | last number<br>voice box<br>voice mail<br>directory   | "Pre-recorded description"  |
| message                                    | display<br>read<br>directory  | "Pre-recorded description"  |
| navigation                                 | stop/resume<br>zoom in/out<br>view  | *<br>destination<br>vehicle   |
| traffic info                               | display<br>read   |   |
| display                                    | audio<br>telephone<br>trip computer<br>Navigation<br>air conditioning                                       |   |
| previous/next<br>stop<br>delete<br>yes/no  | for all level 1 and 2   |   |
| * help/what can I say/cancel               | for all level 1, 2 or *   |   |

# 09 CONFIGURATION



## ADJUSTING THE DATE AND TIME

The CONFIGURATION function gives access to the colour, brightness and units settings and to voice commands.

1



Press the MENU button.



2



Turn the dial and select the CONFIGURATION function.



3



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



4



Turn the dial and select the DISPLAY CONFIGURATION function.

DISPLAY CONFIGURATION



5



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



6



Turn the dial and select the ADJUST THE DATE AND TIME function.

ADJUST THE DATE AND TIME



7



Press the dial to confirm the selection.



8



Adjust the settings one by one confirming by pressing the dial. Next select the OK tab on the screen then confirm.

OK





# 10 SCREEN MENU MAP



## 1 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

### 2 SELECT DESTINATION

3 enter an address

4 country:

4 town:

4 road:

4 N°/\_:

4 curr. loc

4 Archive

4 POI

5 near

5 on the route

5 around current place

5 search by name

3 GPS coordinates

3 directory



## 1 MAIN FUNCTION

### 2 CHOICE A

3 choice A1

3 choice A2

### 2 CHOICE B...

3 previous destinations

## 2 JOURNEY LEGS AND ROUTE

3 add a stage

4 enter an address

4 directory

4 previous destinations

### 3 order/delete journey legs

3 divert route

3 chosen destination

## 2 GUIDANCE OPTIONS

### 3 define calculation criteria

4 fastest

4 shortest

4 distance/time

4 with tolls

4 with ferry

4 traffic info

3 set speech synthesis

3 activate/deactivate road names

3 delete last destinations

## 2 STOP/RESUME GUIDANCE



## 1 MAP

### 2 MAP ORIENTATION

3 vehicle direction

3 north direction

3 3D view

## 2 MAP DETAILS

### 3 administration and safety

4 town halls, town centre

4 universities, colleges

4 hospitals

### 3 hotels, restaurants and shops

4 hotels

4 restaurants

4 vineyards

4 business centres

- 4 supermarkets, shopping
- 3 **culture, tourism and shows**
  - 4 culture and museums
  - 4 casinos and nightlife
  - 4 cinemas and theatres
  - 4 tourism
  - 4 shows and exhibitions
- 3 **sports and open air centres**
  - 4 sports centres
  - 4 golf courses
  - 4 skating rinks, bowling alleys
  - 4 winter sports resorts
  - 4 parks, gardens
  - 4 theme parks
- 3 **transport and automobile**
  - 4 airports, ports
  - 4 stations, bus stations
  - 4 vehicle rental
  - 4 lay-bys, car parks
  - 4 service stations, garages
- 2 **DISPLAY MAP**
  - 3 **full screen MAP**
  - 3 **MAP in window**

- 2 **MOVE THE MAP/FOLLOW VEHICLE**
- 2 **MAP DATABASE DESCRIPTION**



- 1 **TRAFFIC INFORMATION**
  - 2 **READ MESSAGES**
  - 2 **FILTER TRAFFIC INFORMATION**
    - 3 **geographic filter**
      - 3 **store all messages**
      - 3 **store messages**
        - 4 around the vehicle
        - 4 on the route
    - 3 **road information**
      - 4 traffic information
      - 4 road closure
      - 4 size limit
      - 4 road condition
      - 4 weather and visibility
    - 3 **urban/city information**
      - 4 parking
      - 4 public transport
      - 4 demonstrations
  - 2 **CONFIGURE MESSAGE ANNOUNCEMENT**

- 3 **read messages**
- 3 **new message display**
- 2 **SELECT TMC STATION**
  - 3 **automatic TMC**
  - 3 **manual TMC**
  - 3 **list of TMC stations**



- 1 **AUDIO FUNCTIONS**
  - 2 **RADIO FAVOURITES**
    - 3 **enter a frequency**
    - 3 **activate/deactivate RDS mode**
    - 3 **activate/deactivate regional mode**
    - 3 **display/hide radio text**
  - 2 **CD, USB, JUKEBOX FAVOURITES**
    - 3 **activate/deactivate Introscan (SCN)**
    - 3 **activate/deactivate Random mode (RDM)**
    - 3 **activate/deactivate Repeat (RPT)**
    - 3 **activate/deactivate display of CD info**
  - 2 **CD**
    - 3 **copy CD to Jukebox**
      - 4 copy complete CD
      - 4 multiple selection

4 current album

4 current track

3 eject CD

2 USB

3 copy USB to Jukebox

4 complete disc

4 multiple selection

4 current album

4 current track

3 eject USB

2 JUKEBOX

3 jukebox management

3 jukebox configuration

4 hi-fi (320 kbps)

4 high (192 kbps)

4 normal (128 kbps)

3 playlist management

3 delete jukebox data

3 Jukebox status



1 **TELEMATICS**

2 **CALL**

3 **call list**

3 **dial**

3 **directory**

3 **mailbox**

3 **services**

4 customer contact centre

4 CITROËN assistance

4 CITROËN service

4 messages received

2 **DIRECTORY**

3 **managing directory files**

4 consult or modify a file

4 add a file

4 delete a file

4 delete all files

3 **configure directory**

4 select a directory

4 name directory

4 select starting directory

3 **file transfer**

4 exchange by infrared

5 send all records

5 send one record

5 receive by infrared

4 exchange with SIM card

5 send all records to SIM

5 send one record to SIM

5 receive all SIM files

5 receive a SIM file

4 exchange with Bluetooth

2 **TEXT MESSAGES (SMS)**

3 **read received text messages**

3 **send a text message**

3 **write a text message**

3 **delete list of text messages**

2 **TELEPHONE FUNCTIONS**

3 **network**

4 network search mode

5 automatic mode

5 manual mode

4 networks available

3 **length of calls**

4 reset

3 **manage PIN code**

4 activate/deactivate

4 save PIN code

4 modify PIN code

### 3 call options

4 configure calls

5 display my number

5 automatic reply after x ring(s)

### 4 ring options

5 for voice calls

5 for text messages (SMS)

6 text message ring

### 3 calls diversion to mailbox n°

### 3 delete calls log

## 2 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS

### 3 activation mode

4 deactivated

4 activated and visible

4 activated and not visible

### 3 list of matched peripheral equipment

### 3 change the name of the audio/telephone

### 3 authentication code

### 3 phone book synchronisation mode

4 no synchronisation

4 view telephone phone book

4 view SIM card phone book

4 view all phone books



## 1 CONFIGURATION

### 2 DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

#### 3 choose colour

#### 3 adjust luminosity

#### 3 set date and time

#### 3 select units

### 2 SOUND

#### 3 voice commands setting

#### 3 speech synthesis setting

4 guidance instructions volume

4 other message volume

4 select female/male voice

#### 3 activate/deactivate auxiliary source

### 2 SELECT LANGUAGE

### 2 DEFINE VEHICLE PARAMETERS\*



## 1 VIDEO

### 2 ACTIVATE VIDEO MODE

### 2 VIDEO PARAMETERS

#### 3 display formats

#### 3 adjust luminosity

#### 3 set colours

#### 3 set contrasts



## 1 VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

### 2 ALERT LOG

### 2 STATUS OF FUNCTIONS\*

### 2 RESET TYRE PRESS. DETEC. SYS.\*

\* The parameters vary according to vehicle.



Press the MENU button for more than 2 seconds to access the following flow chart.

- 1 VOICE COMMANDS LIST
- 1 AUDIO/TELEPHONE DIAGNOSTICS
- 2 GPS COVERAGE
- 2 UNIT BACKUP POWER
- 2 UNIT DESCRIPTION
- 1 NAVIGATION DEMONSTRATION
- 1 SERVICES CONFIGURATION



Press the Music button several times in succession to access the following settings.

- MUSICAL AMBIENCE
- BASS
- TREBLE
- LOUDNESS CORRECTION
- FR - RR BALANCE
- LH - RH BALANCE
- AUTO VOLUME CORRECTION



Each audio source (Radio, CD, MP3, Jukebox, CD changer) has its own separate settings.

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions.

| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION   |
|---|---|--|
| <p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).</p> | <p>For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).</p> | <p>Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>  |
| <p>The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.</p>                            | <p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p>   | <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| <p>The CD player sound is poor.</p>   | <p>The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.</p>   | <p>Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.</p>  |
|   | <p>The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.</p>   | <p>Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.</p>   |

| QUESTION   | ANSWER  | SOLUTION  |
|--|---|---|
| <p>The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)</p>  | <p>An incorrect waveband is selected.</p>   | <p>Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.</p>                    |
| <p>The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).</p> | <p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.</p>   | <p>Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p> |
|  | <p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.</p>   | <p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>  |
|  | <p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>  | <p>Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.</p>   |
| <p>Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.</p>   | <p>During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.</p>  | <p>Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.</p>                                    |
| <p>With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.</p>   | <p>When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.</p> | <p>Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.</p>   |

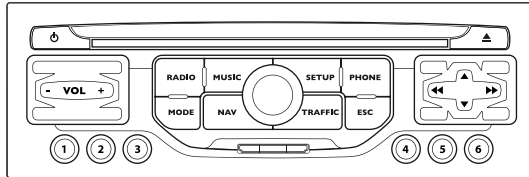
| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|--|--|--|
| <p>The TRAFFIC INFO box is ticked. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.</p> | <p>On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.</p>   | <p>Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).</p>  |
|  | <p>In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, ...) are listed for the traffic information.</p>  | <p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.</p>  |
| <p>The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.</p>  | <p>The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.</p> | <p>Wait until the CD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.</p>  |
| <p>Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?</p>   | <p>Certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.</p>  | <p>Insert a valid SIM card in the slot on the system.</p>  |
| <p>The altitude is not displayed.</p>  | <p>On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.</p>                                  | <p>Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the MENU button, then select AUDIO/TELEPHONE DIAGNOSTICS, then GPS COVERAGE).</p> |
|  | <p>Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, ...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.</p>                   | <p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.</p>  |
| <p>My SIM card is not recognised.</p>  | <p>The system accepts 3.3 V SIM cards, the old 5 V and 1.8 V SIM cards are not recognised.</p>   | <p>Contact your telephone operator.</p>  |



| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION  |
|---|---|---|
| <p>The route is not calculated successfully.</p>  | <p>The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a motorway with tolls).</p>                    | <p>Check the exclusion criteria.</p>  |
| <p>There is a long wait after inserting a CD.</p> | <p>When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.</p> | <p>This phenomenon is normal.</p>   |
| <p>I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.</p>   | <p>The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on.</li> <li>- Check that your telephone is visible.</li> </ul> |

# MyWay

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO EQUIPMENT/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE  
GPS EUROPE BY SD CARD



The MyWay is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the MyWay switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.



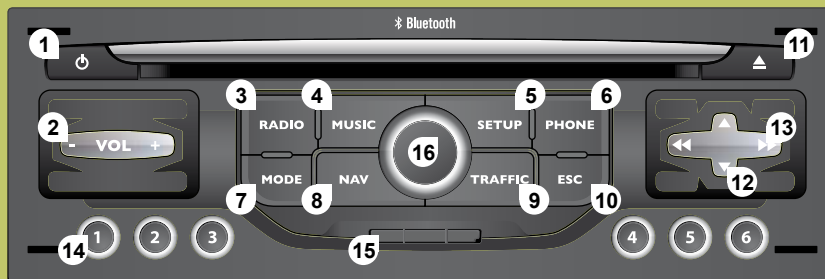
Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

## CONTENTS

- **01 First steps** p. 252
- **02 General operation** p. 253
- **03 Navigation - Guidance** p. 255
- **04 Traffic information** p. 262
- **05 Radio** p. 263
- **06 Music media players** p. 264
- **07 Bluetooth telephone** p. 267
- **08 Configuration** p. 269
- **09 Steering wheel controls** p. 271
- **10 Screen menu map** p. 272
- **Frequently asked questions** p. 275

# 01 FIRST STEPS

## MyWay CONTROL PANEL

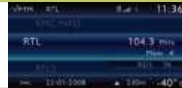


1. Engine not running
  - Short press: on/off.
  - Long press: CD pause, mute for the radio.
2. Engine running
  - Short press: CD pause, mute for the radio.
  - Long press: reinitialisation of the system.
3. Volume adjustment.
4. Access to the "Radio" Menu. Display the list of stations.
5. Access to the "Music" Menu. Display the tracks.
- 6-4. Long press: access to the audio settings: front/rear and left/right balance, bass/treble, equalizer, loudness, automatic volume adjustment, initialise the settings.
5. Access to the "SETUP" Menu.
  - Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the demonstration mode.
6. Access to the "Phone" Menu. Display the call list.
7. Access to the "MODE" Menu.
  - Selection of the successive display of: Radio, Map, NAV (if navigation is in progress), Telephone (if a conversation is in progress), Trip Computer.
  - Long press: display of a black screen (DARK).
8. Access to the "Navigation" Menu. Display the last destinations.
9. Access to the "Traffic" Menu. Display the current traffic alerts.
10. ESC: abandon the operation in progress.
11. CD eject.
12. Selection of the previous/next radio station from the list.
  - Selection of the previous/next CD.
  - Selection of the previous/next MP3 directory.
  - Selection of the previous/next page of a list.
13. Selection of the previous/next radio station.
  - Selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.
  - Selection of the previous/next line of a list.
14. Buttons 1 to 6:
  - Selection of the stored radio station.
  - Selection of the CD in the CD changer.
  - Long press: store the current radio station.
15. SD card reader.
16. Dial for selection of the screen display and according to the context of the menu.
  - Short press: confirmation.

# GENERAL OPERATION 02

Press the MODE button several times in succession for access to the following menus:

## RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

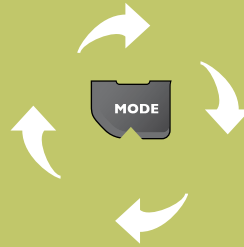


## TELEPHONE

(If a conversation is in progress)



## TRIP COMPUTER

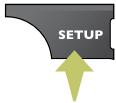


## FULL SCREEN MAP



## NAVIGATION

(If guidance is in progress)



### SETUP:

system language, date and time, display, vehicle settings, unit and system settings, "Demo mode".



### TRAFFIC:

TMC information and messages



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to section 10.

# 02 GENERAL OPERATION

## DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



A press on the OK dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

### NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):

- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE
- 1 REPEAT ADVICE
- 1 BLOCK ROAD
- 1 ROUTE INFO
- 2 SHOW DESTINATION
- 2 TRIP INFO
  - 3 Route type
  - 3 Avoid
  - 3 Satellites
- 2 ZOOM/SCROLL
- 1 VOICE ADVICE
- 1 ROUTE OPTIONS

### TRIP COMPUTER:

- 1 ALERT LOG
- 1 STATUS OF FUNCTIONS

### TELEPHONE:

- 1 END CALL
- 1 HOLD CALL
- 1 DIAL
- 1 DTMF-TONES
- 1 PRIVATE MODE
- 1 MICRO OFF

### MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 TRAFFIC INFO (TA)
- 1 PLAY OPTIONS
  - 2 NORMAL ORDER
  - 2 RANDOM TRACK
  - 2 REPEAT FOLDER
  - 2 SCAN
- 1 SELECT MUSIC

### RADIO:

- 1 IN FM MODE
  - 2 TRAFFIC INFO (TA)
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 RADIOTEXT
  - 2 REGIONAL PROG.
  - 2 AM
- 1 IN AM MODE
  - 2 TA
  - 2 REFRESH AM LIST
  - 2 FM

### FULL SCREEN MAP:

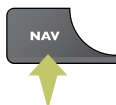
- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE/RESUME GUIDANCE
- 1 SET DESTINATION
- 1 POIS NEARBY
- 1 POSITION INFO
- 1 MAP SETTINGS
- 1 ZOOM/SCROLL

# 03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

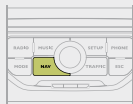
## SELECTING A DESTINATION

Insert the SD card in the front panel reader and leave it there to use the Navigation functions. The navigation SD card data must not be modified. Map data updates are available from CITROËN dealers.

1



Press the NAV button.



4



Select the "Address input" function and press the dial to confirm.

ADDRESS INPUT



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the "Navigation" Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"NAVIGATION" MENU



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the town function. Press the dial to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press the dial to confirm.

DESTINATION INPUT



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

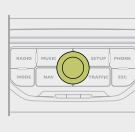


To clear a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".  
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:  
Delete entry  
Delete list

7



Turn the dial and select OK.  
Press the dial to confirm.

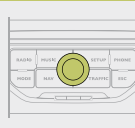


To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.  
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street"  
and "House number" functions.

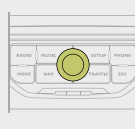


Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press the dial to confirm the selection.  
MyWay allows up to 4 000 contact files to be recorded.

9



During guidance, pressing the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.



10



Then select "Start route guidance"  
and the press the dial to confirm.

START ROUTE GUIDANCE



Select the route type:  
"Fast route", "Short route" or "Optimized route" and press the dial to confirm.  
It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations".

CHOOSE FROM ADDRESS BOOK

CHOOSE FROM LAST DESTINATIONS



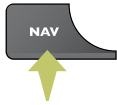
You can zoom in/zoom out on the map using the dial.  
It is possible to scroll the map or select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the FULL SCREEN MAP. Press the dial then select "Map settings".

# 03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

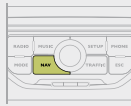
## ROUTE OPTIONS

The route selected by the MyWay audio/telephone depends directly on the route options. Changing these options may change the route completely.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**"NAVIGATION" MENU**



3



Select the "Route options" function and press the dial to confirm.

**ROUTE OPTIONS**

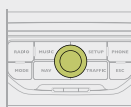


4



Select the "Route type" function and press the dial to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

**ROUTE TYPE**



5



Select the "Route dynamics" function. This function gives access to the "Traffic independent" or "Semi-dynamic" options.

**ROUTE DYNAMICS**



6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the AVOID options (motorways, toll roads, ferries).

**AVOIDANCE CRITERIA**



7



Turn the dial and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press the dial to confirm.

**RECALCULATE**

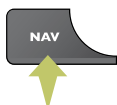




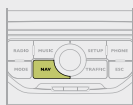
## ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to the route once the destination has been selected.

1



Press the NAV button.

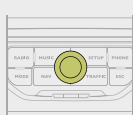


2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"NAVIGATION" MENU



3



Select the "Stopovers" function and press the dial to confirm.

STOPOVERS



4



Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

ADD STOPOVER

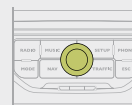


5



Enter a new address, for example.

ADDRESS INPUT

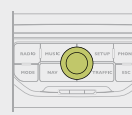


6



Once the new address has been entered, select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK

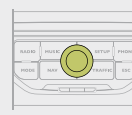


7



Select "Recalculate" and press the dial to confirm.

RECALCULATE



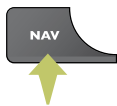
The stopover must be completed or deleted in order for the guidance to continue to the next destination. Otherwise, the MyWay will always return you to the previous stopover.

# 03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



Press the NAV button.

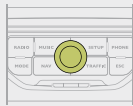


2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"NAVIGATION" MENU

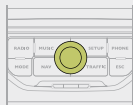


3



Select the "POI search" function and press the dial to confirm.

POI SEARCH



4



Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

POI NEARBY

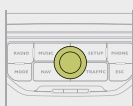


5



Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

POI NEAR DESTINATION



6



Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI IN CITY



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7



Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

POI IN COUNTRY



8



Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI NEAR ROUTE





























# 03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE











This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



## List of POIs

-  Service station
-  LPG station
-  Garage
-  CITROËN
-  Motor racing circuit
-  Covered car park
-  Car park
-  Rest area
-  Hotel
-  Restaurant
-  Refreshment area
-  Picnic area
-  Cafeteria

-  Airport
-  Railway station
-  Bus station
-  Port
-  Industrial estate
-  Supermarket
-  Bank
-  Vending machine
-  Tennis court
-  Swimming pool
-  Golf course
-  Winter sports resort
-  Theatre

-  Cinema
-  Camp site
-  Theme parks
-  Hospital
-  Pharmacy
-  Police station
-  School
-  Post office
-  Museum
-  Tourist information
-  Automatic speed camera\*
-  Red light camera\*
-  Hazardous location\*

\* According to availability in the country.

# 03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## NAVIGATION SETTINGS

Contact a CITROËN dealer for details of the procedure for obtaining the HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs. Updating of the HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs requires an SDHC (High Capacity) compatible reader.

1



Press the NAV button.



4



Select the "Navi volume" function and turn the dial to set the volume of each voice synthesiser (traffic information, alert messages...).

NAVI VOLUME

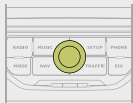


2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"NAVIGATION" MENU



5



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI CATEGORIES ON MAP

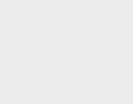


3



Select the "Settings" function and press the dial to confirm.

SETTINGS



6



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

SET PARAMETERS FOR RISK AREAS



# 04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

## CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the "Traffic" Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the "Traffic" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"TRAFFIC" MENU



The TMC icon, at the bottom left of the screen, may appear in 3 different forms:

- No TMC station available,
- TMC station available, no message on route,
- TMC station available and messages on route (if guidance is active).

The filters are independent and their results are cumulative. We recommend a filter on the route and a filter around the vehicle of:

- 2 miles (3 km) or 3 miles (5 km) for a region with heavy traffic,
- 6 miles (10 km) for a region with normal traffic,
- 30 miles (50 km) for long journeys (motorway).

3

Select the filter of your choice:

MESSAGES ON ROUTE

ALL WARNING ON ROUTE

ONLY WARNINGS MESSAGES

ALL MESSAGES



The messages appear on the map and on the list. To exit, press ESC.



4



Select the "Geo. Filter" function and press the dial to confirm.

GEO. FILTER



5



Then select the radius of the filter (in miles (km)) required in accordance with the route, press the dial to confirm. When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographical filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographical filter follows the movement of the vehicle.



# 05 RADIO

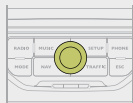
The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

## SELECTING A STATION

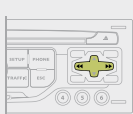
1



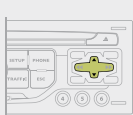
Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order. Select the station required by turning the dial and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press one of the buttons to select the previous or next station on the list.



A long press of one of the buttons starts the automatic search for a station with a lower or higher frequency.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

## RDS - REGIONAL MODE - TRAFFIC INFO

1

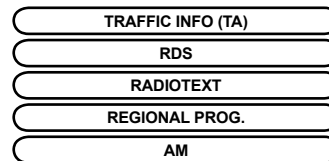


When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:



3



Select the function required and press the dial to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



The RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

# 06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## CD, MP3/WMA CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



The MyWay will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps. It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard. If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



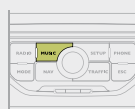
It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

## SELECTING/PLAYING MUSIC CD, MP3/WMA CD

1



Press the MUSIC button.



4



Select the music source required:  
CD, MP3/WMA CD. Press the dial to  
confirm. Play begins.



!

The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Music" Menu.

2



Press the MUSIC button again or  
select the "Music" Menu function and  
press the dial to confirm.

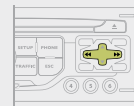
"MUSIC" MENU



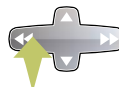
5



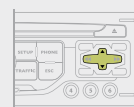
Press the up or down button to select  
the next/previous folder.



6



Press one of the buttons to select a  
music track.  
Press and hold one of the buttons for  
fast forward or rewind play.



3



Select the "Select music" function and  
press the dial to confirm.

SELECT MUSIC



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the settings used. We recommend the ISO 9660 file standard.



# 06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## USING THE EXTERNAL INPUT (AUX) AUDIO/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

Connect the portable equipment (MP3/WMA player...) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.



2



Press the MUSIC button then press it again or select the "Music" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.



"MUSIC" MENU

3



Select the "External device" function and press the dial to activate it.

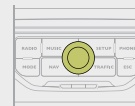


EXTERNAL DEVICE

4



Select the AUX music source and press the dial to confirm. Play begins automatically.



!

The display and management of the controls is via the portable equipment.

# 07 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE



## CONNECTING A TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.



For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the MyWay must be carried out with the vehicle stationary. The ignition must be on.

1

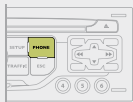
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function. The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2



Press the PHONE button.



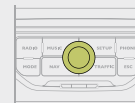
The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required for a new connection.

3



For a first connection, select "Search phone" and press the dial to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

SEARCH PHONE



4

Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.



Once the telephone has been connected, MyWay can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

1



To change the telephone connected, press the PHONE button, then select "Phone" Menu and press the dial to confirm.



2



Select "Connect phone". Select the telephone and press to confirm.

CONNECT PHONE



## RECEIVING A CALL

1

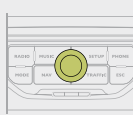
An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

2



Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing the dial.

YES NO



3



To hang up, press the PHONE button or press the dial and select "End call" then confirm by pressing the dial.

END CALL



4



To refuse, turn the dial or press and hold the TEL button.

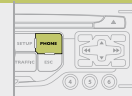


## MAKING A CALL

1



Press the PHONE button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under "Phone" Menu. You can select a number and press the dial to make the call.

2

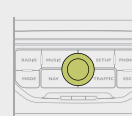


Select the "Phone" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"PHONE" MENU

Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

DIAL NUMBER



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The MyWay permits the recording of up to 4 000 entries. Press the end of the steering wheel control for more than two seconds to gain access to the address book.



To delete a number, press the PHONE button then press and hold on a call number to display a list of actions including:  
Delete entry  
Delete list

# 08 CONFIGURATION

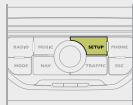
## SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

This function gives access to the options: System language, Date & Time, Display (Brightness, Colour, Map colour), Vehicle, Units, System.

1



Press the SET UP button.

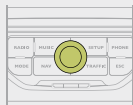


2



Select the "Date & Time" function and press the dial to confirm.

DATE AND TIME



3



Select the "Set date & time" function and press the dial to confirm.

SET DATE AND TIME



4



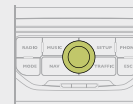
Set the parameters one by one using the direction arrows and confirm by means of the dial.



5



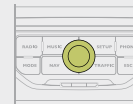
Select the "Date format" function and press the dial to confirm.



6



Confirm the format required using the dial. Select the "Time format" function and press the dial to confirm.



Confirm the format required using the dial. Pressing the SET UP button for more than 2 seconds gives access to:

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNIT

GPS COVERAGE

DEMO MODE

# TRIP COMPUTER/VEHICLE PARAMETERS

## VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

1



- The "vehicle" tab:  
The range, the current consumption and the distance remaining.
- The "1" (trip 1) tab with:  
The average speed, the average consumption and the distance travelled calculated over route "1".
- The "2" (trip 2) tab with the same functions for a second route.



Each press of the button at the end of the wiper stalk displays the different trip computer information in succession, according to the screen.

## A FEW DEFINITIONS

i

**Range:** displays the distance which can be travelled with the remaining fuel detected in the tank, based on the average consumption over the last few miles (kilometres). This displayed value may vary significantly following a change in the vehicle speed or the relief of the route. When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km). If, whilst driving, dashes are displayed continuously in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer.

**Current fuel consumption:** only calculated and displayed above 20 mph (30 km/h).

**Average fuel consumption:** this is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.

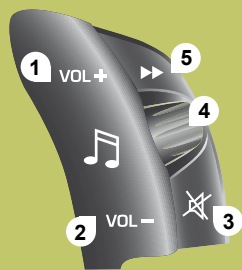
**Distance travelled:** calculated since the last trip computer zero reset.

**Distance remaining to the destination:** calculated with reference to the final destination, entered by the user. If guidance is activated, the navigation system calculates it as a current value.

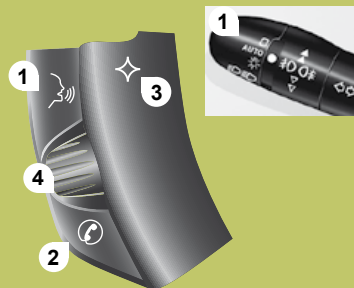
**Average speed:** this is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

# 09 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

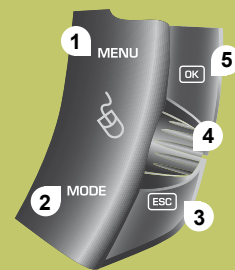
## C4 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Successive presses mute/restore the sound.
4. Rotation - associated with a pop-up.  
Radio - access the 6 stored stations: next or previous.  
Music players: previous/next track.
5. Radio: next station.  
Music players: next track.



1. Press.  
Repeat the current spoken navigation instruction.
2. Short press to make a telephone call.  
Pick up/Hang up.  
Access the telephone menu.  
Display the call list.  
Long press to reject an incoming call.
3. Personalisation.  
Short press to confirm the choice made using the dial.
4. Rotation.  
Scroll through the call list in the phone book.  
Personalisation selection.



1. Short press: provides access to the menu according to the display on the screen.
2. Successive presses: provides access according to the current display on the screen.  
MAP/NAV (if navigation is in progress), TEL (if a conversation is in progress), RADIO or MEDIA in progress, Trip computer.  
Long press: switch to black screen - Dark (night driving).  
Touching a control restores the display.
3. ESC: abandon the current operation.
4. Rotation: selects the access to the short-cut menus according to the current display.
5. Confirms the choice displayed on the screen.

# 10 SCREEN MENU MAP



## 1 MAIN FUNCTION

- 2 CHOICE A
- 3 choice A1
- 3 choice A2
- 2 CHOICE B...



## 1 "TRAFFIC" MENU

- 2 MESSAGES ON ROUTE
- 2 ONLY WARNINGS ON ROUTE
- 2 ALL WARNING MESSAGES
- 2 ALL MESSAGES
- 2 GEO. FILTER
  - 3 Within 2 miles (3 km)
  - 3 Within 3 miles (5 km)
  - 3 Within 6 miles (10 km)
  - 3 Within 30 miles (50 km)
  - 3 Within 60 miles (100 km)



## 1 "MUSIC" MENU

- 2 SELECT MUSIC
- 2 SOUND SETTINGS
  - 3 Balance/Fader
  - 3 Bass/Treble
  - 3 Equalizer
    - 4 Linear
    - 4 Classic
    - 4 Jazz
    - 4 Rock/Pop
    - 4 Techno
    - 4 Vocal
  - 3 Loudness
- 3 Speed dependent volume
- 3 Reset sound settings



## 1 "RADIO" MENU

- 2 WAVEBAND
  - 3 FM
  - 3 AM
- 2 MANUAL TUNE
- 2 SOUND SETTINGS
  - 3 Balance/Fader
  - 3 Bass/Treble
  - 3 Equalizer
    - 4 Linear
    - 4 Classic
    - 4 Jazz
    - 4 Rock/Pop
    - 4 Techno
    - 4 Vocal
  - 3 Loudness
- 3 Speed dependent volume
- 3 Reset sound settings



## 1 "NAVIGATION" MENU

2 **ABORT GUIDANCE/RESUME GUIDANCE**

2 **DESTINATION INPUT**

3 **Address input**

4 Country

4 City

4 Street

4 House number

4 Start route guidance

4 Postal code

4 Save to address book

4 Intersection

4 City district

4 Geo position

4 MAP

3 **Navigate HOME**

3 **Choose from address book**

3 **Choose from last destinations**

3 **TMC station information**

2 **STOPOVERS**

3 **Add stopover**

4 Address input

4 Navigate home

4 Choose from address book

4 Choose from last destinations

3 **Rearrange route**

3 **Replace stopover**

3 **Delete stopover**

3 **Recalculate**

4 Fast route

4 Short route

4 Optimized route

2 **POI SEARCH**

3 **POI nearby**

3 **POI near destination**

3 **POI in city**

3 **POI in country**

3 **POI near route**

2 **ROUTE OPTIONS**

3 **Route type**

4 Fast route

4 Short route

4 Optimized route

3 **Route dynamics**

4 Traffic independent

4 Semi-dynamic

3 **Avoidance criteria**

4 Avoid motorways

4 Avoid toll roads

4 Avoid ferries

3 **Recalculate**

2 **SETTINGS**

3 **Navi volume**

3 **POI categories on MAP**





## 1 "PHONE" MENU

- 2 DIAL NUMBER
- 2 DIAL FROM ADDRESS BOOK
- 2 CALL LISTS
- 2 CONNECT PHONE
  - 3 Search phone
  - 3 Phones connected
    - 4 Disconnect phone
    - 4 Rename phone
    - 4 Delete pairing
    - 4 Delete all pairings
    - 4 Show details
- 2 SETTINGS
  - 3 Select ring tone
  - 3 Phone/Ring tone volume
  - 3 Enter mailbox number



## 1 "SETUP" MENU

- 2 SYSTEM LANGUAGE
  - 3 Deutsch
  - 3 English
  - 3 Español
  - 3 Français
  - 3 Italiano
  - 3 Nederlands
  - 3 Polski
  - 3 Portuguese
- 2 DATE & TIME
  - 3 Set date & time
  - 3 Date format
  - 3 Time format
- 2 DISPLAY
  - 3 Brightness
  - 3 Colour
    - 4 Pop titanium
    - 4 Toffee
    - 4 Blue steel
    - 4 Technogrey

- 4 Dark blue
- 3 MAP colour
  - 4 Day mode for MAP
  - 4 Night mode for MAP
  - 4 Auto. Day/Night for MAP

## 2 VEHICLE

- 3 Vehicle information
  - 4 Alert log
  - 4 Status of functions

## 2 UNITS

- 3 Temperature
  - 4 Celsius
  - 4 Fahrenheit
- 3 Metric/Imperial
  - 4 Kilometres (Consumption: l/100)
  - 4 Kilometres (Consumption: km/l)
  - 4 Miles (Consumption: MPG)

## 2 SYSTEM

- 3 Factory reset
- 3 Software version
- 3 Automatic scrolling

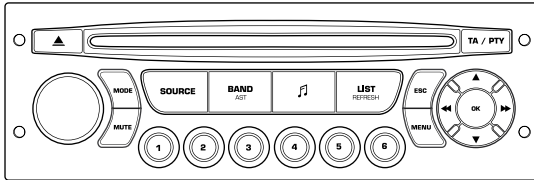
# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|---|--|---|
| <p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).</p> | <p>For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).</p>                                      | <p>Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the Linear musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>   |
| <p>The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.</p>                            | <p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Because of their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| <p>The CD player sound is poor.</p>   | <p>The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.</p>  | <p>Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.</p>   |
|   | <p>The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.</p>  | <p>Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.</p>  |

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|---|--|--|
| The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)  | An incorrect waveband is selected.   | Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.                    |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.   | Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|   | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.   | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.  |
|   | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).  | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.   |
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.   | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.  | Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.                                    |
| With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.   | When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge.<br>The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.   |

| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|--|--|---|
| <p>The TA box is ticked. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.</p> | <p>On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.</p>   | <p>Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).</p>   |
|  | <p>In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.</p>  | <p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.</p>   |
| <p>The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.</p>                              | <p>The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.</p> | <p>Wait until the CD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.</p>   |
| <p>The altitude is not displayed.</p>  | <p>On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 3 satellites correctly.</p>                                  | <p>Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 3 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select GPS coverage).</p> |
|  | <p>Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.</p>                     | <p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.</p>   |
| <p>The route is not calculated successfully.</p>   | <p>The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a motorway with tolls).</p>                                 | <p>Check the exclusion criteria.</p>  |
| <p>There is a long waiting time after inserting a CD.</p>  | <p>When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.</p>           | <p>This phenomenon is normal.</p>   |
| <p>I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.</p>  | <p>The telephone's Bluetooth function may be deactivated or the equipment may not be visible.</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is activated.</li> <li>- Check that your telephone is visible.</li> </ul>               |

# Audio system



The audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer for configuration of the system.

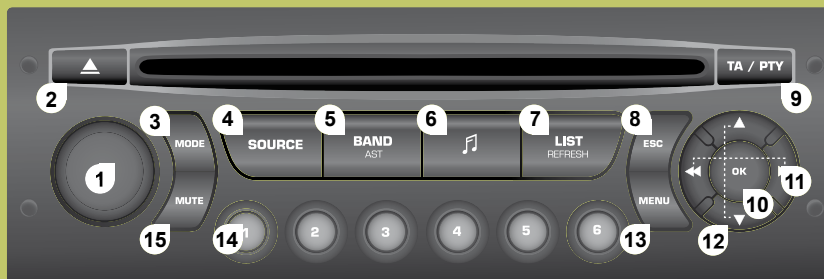


For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is off, and in order to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

## CONTENTS

- **01 First steps** p. 280
- **02 General menu** p. 281
- **03 Audio** p. 282
- **04 USB reader** p. 285
- **05 Bluetooth functions** p. 288
- **06 Control short-cuts** p. 290
- **07 Configuration** p. 291
- **08 Screen menu map** p. 292
- **Frequently asked questions** p. 294

# 01 FIRST STEPS



1. On/Off and volume adjustment.
2. CD eject.
3. Selection of the display on the screen from the modes: Audio (AUDIO), Trip Computer (TRIP) and Hands-Free Kit (TEL) functions.
4. Selection of the source: radio, audio CD/MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming.
5. Selection of the FM1, FM2, FMast and AM wavebands.
6. Setting the audio options: front/rear balance, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambiances.
7. Display the list of local stations, of the tracks on the CD or of the MP3 directories.
8. Abandon current operation.
9. TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off. Long press: access to the PTY (Types of radio programme) mode.
10. Confirmation.
11. Automatic search for a lower/higher frequency. Selection of previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.
12. Selection of a lower/higher radio frequency. Selection of the previous/next CD. Selection of the previous/next MP3 directory. Selection of the previous/next USB equipment directory/genre/artist/playlist.
13. Display of the general menu.
14. Buttons 1 to 6: Selection of a stored radio station. Long press: storing of a station.
15. The MUTE button cuts off or restores the sound.

# GENERAL MENU 02

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:  
radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE:  
hands-free kit, pairing,  
management of a call.

## > MONOCHROME SCREEN C



TRIP COMPUTER: warnings, status  
of functions.

PERSONALISATION-  
CONFIGURATION:  
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

## > MONOCHROME SCREEN A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this chapter.

# 03 AUDIO



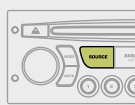
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## RADIO SELECTING A STATION

1



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



2



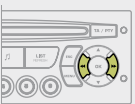
Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



3



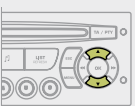
Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



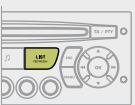
4



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search of the radio stations.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum). To update this list, press for more than two seconds.

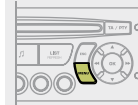


## RDS

1



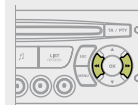
Press the MENU button.



2



Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



3



Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.

FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES

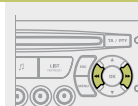


4



Select ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS) then press OK. RDS appears on the display.

ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS)



The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.



## CD PLAYING A CD

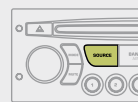


Insert circular compact discs only.  
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.  
Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

1



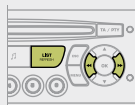
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.  
Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.  
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



## MP3 CD PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION



Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.  
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

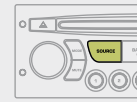


On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.  
While the CD is being played, the directory flow chart is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1



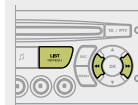
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.  
Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.  
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



# 03 AUDIO

## MP3 CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc. In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet. If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.



The audio equipment will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

# 04 USB PLAYER

## USING THE USB

1



This unit consists of a USB port and a Jack socket\*. The audio files are transmitted from portable equipment such as a digital player or a USB memory stick to your Audio system to be listened to via the vehicle's speakers.

2

USB key (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or Ipod® of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the Ipod® lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is by means of the steering wheel controls,
- the IPod software should be regularly updated for the best connection.



3

Other Ipod® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol\*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable equipment.



The list of compatible equipment is available from CITROËN dealers.

## CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1

Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB stick.



The file formats recognised are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.

The playlists types accepted are m3u, .pls, .wpl.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB equipment. The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the Ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

\* According to vehicle.

# 04 USB PLAYER

## USING THE USB SOCKET

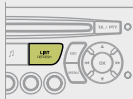
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications. Select by Folder/Artist/Genre/Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.

OK



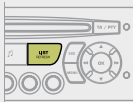
- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, classified in alphabetical order without following the flow chart.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



3



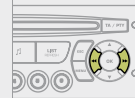
Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.



4



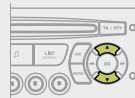
Navigate through the list using the left/right and up/down buttons. Confirm the selection by pressing OK. Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next track on the classification list currently being played.



5



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play. Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



## CONNECTING AN IPOD® VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined on the iPod®). Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 5 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB devices other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

## USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK SOCKET OR RCA SOCKET (according to vehicle)



The auxiliary input, JACK or RCA, permits the connection of portable equipment (MP3 player...).



Do not connect a single piece of equipment via the USB port and the JACK socket at the same time.

1

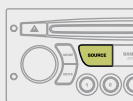
Connect the portable equipment (MP3 player...) to the JACK socket or to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

First adjust the volume of your portable equipment.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio equipment.



The controls are displayed and managed via the portable equipment.



# 05 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS



## BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE SCREEN C



The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.  
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from the network.  
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

### PAIRING A TELEPHONE



For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth system of your audio equipment should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary. The ignition must be on.

1



Press the MENU button.



2

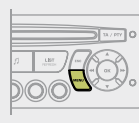
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function.



3



In the menu, select:  
- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio  
- Bluetooth configuration  
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4

A window is displayed with "Searching...".

5

The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.



The TELEPHONE menu gives access to the following functions in particular: Directory\*, Call list, Pairing management.

\* if your telephone hardware is fully compatible.

6

Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7

A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits. Confirm by pressing Ok.



8

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone chosen: to accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm by pressing Ok.  
If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9

"Pairing of Name\_telephone successful" appears on the screen.

10

The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.  
The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

The pairing can also be initiated from the telephone.

## BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING (AVAILABLE DURING THE YEAR)

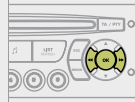
### RECEIVING A CALL

- 1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

- 2 Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



YES



Press the steering wheel control OK to accept the call.



### MAKING A CALL

- 1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then call, call list or directory.

- 2 Press the TEL steering wheel control for access to your directory.  
Or  
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP/AVRCP).

- 1 Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 10 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.

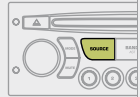


- 2 Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu. The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.



3

Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button\*. The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the Radio control panel and the steering wheel controls\*\*. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.

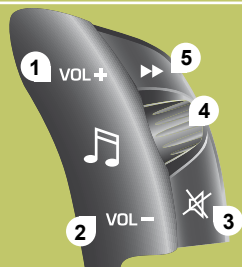


\* In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

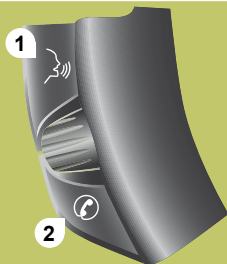
\*\* If the telephone supports the function.

# 06 CONTROL SHORT-CUTS

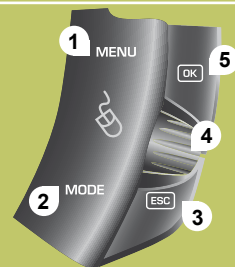
## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Mute.
4. RADIO:  
selection of the previous or next stored station.  
CD/MP3/USB:  
selection of the previous or next directory.
5. RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
CD/MP3/USB:  
selection of the next track.  
CD/MP3:  
continuous press: fast forwards play.



- If your vehicle is fitted with the Bluetooth system:
1. Press: activation of telephone voice recognition (if the telephone offers this function).
  2. Press: displays the phone book, of the call list.



1. Displays the main screen.
2. Selection of the type of information displayed on the right-hand side of the screen for the monochrome screen A.
3. Abandon the operation in progress and return to the previous display.
4. Navigation through the menus.
5. Confirmation of the function selected.  
If your vehicle is fitted with the Bluetooth system: pick up an incoming call or hang up a call which is in progress.



# 07 CONFIGURATION



## ADJUSTING THE DATE AND TIME SCREEN C

1



Press the MENU button.



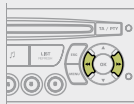
2



Using the arrows, select the PERSONALISATION CONFIGURATION function.



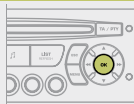
PERSONALISATION CONFIGURATION



3



Press to confirm the selection.



4



Using the arrows, select the DISPLAY CONFIGURATION function.

DISPLAY CONFIGURATION



5



Press to confirm the selection.



6



Using the arrows, select the ADJUST DATE AND TIME function.

ADJUST DATE AND TIME



7



Press to confirm the selection.



8



Adjust the settings one by one confirming by pressing the OK button. Next select the OK tab on the screen then confirm.

OK



# 08 SCREEN MENU MAP

## monochrome A



- 1 MAIN FUNCTION
- 2 CHOICE A
- 3 Choice A1
- 3 Choice A2
- 2 CHOICE B...

### 1 RADIO-CD

2 RDS SEARCH

2 REG MODE

2 CD REPEAT

2 RANDOM PLAY

### 1 VEHICLE CONFIG\*

2 REV WIPE ACT

2 GUIDE LAMPS

### 1 OPTIONS

2 DIAGNOSTICS

3 consult

3 abandon

### 1 UNITS

2 TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS/°FAHRENHEIT

2 FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

### 1 DISPLAY ADJUST

2 YEAR

2 MONTH

2 DAY

2 HOUR

2 MINUTES

2 12 H/24 H MODE

### 1 LANGUAGES

2 FRANCAIS

2 ITALIANO

2 NEDERLANDS

2 PORTUGUES

2 PORTUGUES-BRASIL

2 DEUTSCH

2 ENGLISH

2 ESPANOL

## monochrome C



Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:

### RADIO

1 activate/deactivate RDS

1 activate/deactivate REG mode

1 activate/deactivate radiotext

### CD/MP3 CD

1 activate/deactivate Intro

1 activate/deactivate track repeat

1 Audio CD/Changer: the entire CD

1 MP3 CD/MP3 Changer: the entire current folder

1 activate/deactivate random play

1 Audio CD/Changer: the entire CD

1 MP3 CD: the entire current folder

1 MP3 Changer: all of the folders

### USB

1 activate/deactivate track repeat

1 current folders/artist/genre/playlist

1 activate/deactivate random play

1 current folders/artist/genre/playlist

\* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

# 08 SCREEN MENU MAP

## monochrome A



- 1 MAIN FUNCTION
- 2 CHOICE A
- 3 Choice A1
- 3 Choice A2
- 2 CHOICE B...

### 1 RADIO-CD

2 RDS SEARCH

2 REG MODE

2 CD REPEAT

2 RANDOM PLAY

### 1 VEHICLE CONFIG\*

2 REV WIPE ACT

2 GUIDE LAMPS

### 1 OPTIONS

2 DIAGNOSTICS

3 consult

3 abandon

### 1 UNITS

2 TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS/°FAHRENHEIT

2 FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

### 1 DISPLAY ADJUST

2 YEAR

2 MONTH

2 DAY

2 HOUR

2 MINUTES

2 12 H/24 H MODE

### 1 LANGUAGES

2 FRANCAIS

2 ITALIANO

2 NEDERLANDS

2 PORTUGUES

2 PORTUGUES-BRASIL

2 DEUTSCH

2 ENGLISH

2 ESPANOL

## monochrome C



Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:

### RADIO

1 activate/deactivate RDS

1 activate/deactivate REG mode

1 activate/deactivate radiotext

### CD/MP3 CD

1 activate/deactivate Intro

1 activate/deactivate track repeat

1 Audio CD/Changer: the entire CD

1 MP3 CD/MP3 Changer: the entire current folder

1 activate/deactivate random play

1 Audio CD/Changer: the entire CD

1 MP3 CD: the entire current folder

1 MP3 Changer: all of the folders

### USB

1 activate/deactivate track repeat

1 current folders/artist/genre/playlist

1 activate/deactivate random play

1 current folders/artist/genre/playlist

\* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

# 08 SCREEN MENU MAP monochrome C



## 1 AUDIO FUNCTIONS

### 2 FM BAND PREFERENCES

#### 3 alternative frequencies (RDS)

4 activate/deactivate

#### 3 regional mode (REG)

4 activate/deactivate

#### 3 radio-text information (RDTXT)

4 activate/deactivate

### 2 PLAY MODES

#### 3 album repeat (RPT)

4 activate/deactivate

#### 3 track random play (RDM)

4 activate/deactivate



## 1 TRIP COMPUTER

### 2 ENTER DISTANCE TO DESTINATION

### 2 WARNING LOG

### 2 STATUS OF FUNCTIONS



## 1 PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

### 2 DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS\*

### 2 DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

#### 3 video brightness adjustment

4 normal video

4 inverse video

4 brightness (- +) adjustment

#### 3 date and time adjustment

#### 3 day/month/year adjustment

4 hour/minute adjustment

4 choice of 12 h/24 h mode

#### 3 choice of units

4 l/100 km - mpg - km/l

4 °Celsius/°Fahrenheit

### 2 CHOICE OF LANGUAGE



## 1 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

### 2 BLUETOOTH CONFIGURATION

#### 3 Connect/Disconnect a device

#### 3 Telephone function

#### 3 Audio Streaming function

4 Consult the paired device

4 Delete a paired device

4 Perform a Bluetooth search

### 2 CALL

#### 3 Calls list

4 Directory

### 2 MANAGE THE TELEPHONE CALL

3 Terminate the current call

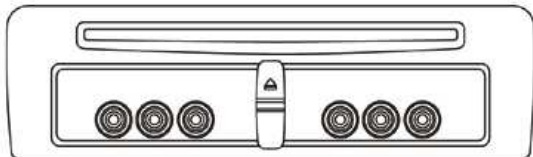
3 Activate private mode

\* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|--|--|---|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...). | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).   | Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.  |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.                            | <p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen.                             | <p>The Bluetooth connection is cut.</p> <p>The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.</p>  | Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.  |
|  | <p>The USB memory stick is not recognised.</p> <p>The memory stick may be corrupt.</p>   | Reformat the memory stick.  |
| The CD player sound is poor.   | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.   | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.  |
|  | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable.   | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.   |

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|---|--|--|
| The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).   | An incorrect waveband is selected.   | Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.                    |
| The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.   | The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.   | Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.  |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.   | Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|   | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.   | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.  |
|   | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).  | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.   |
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.   | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.  | Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.                                    |
| With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.   | When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge.<br>The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.   |
| The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.  | In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.               | Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.   |



# VIDEO PACK

## DVD/AUDIO CD/MP3 PLAYER



For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

The player is compatible with the following formats: DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD+RW, CD-R, CD-RW, VCD and SVCD.

By means of the AUX1 and AUX2 inputs, this pack permits the connection of auxiliary systems (camcorder, games console, etc.).

The audio equipment only plays audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 32 KHz to 48 KHz.



All of the functions of the video pack are described in the separate manual supplied with your vehicle.

## CONTENTS

- **01 First steps** p. 298
- **02 Setup** p. 300
- **03 Basic functions** p. 301
- **04 Screen menu map** p. 303
- **05 Frequently asked questions** p. 304

# 01 FIRST STEPS

## MONITORS AND DVD/CD PLAYER



The monitors are located in the top of the front seats.



The DVD/CD player is located on the centre console.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Monitor positioning handles.</li><li>2. Folding and pivoting TFT/LCD screen.</li><li>3. Infra-red cell.</li><li>4. DVD/CD player opening provided for the disc.</li><li>5. On/Off.<br/>DVD/CD eject.</li></ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>6. LED:<br/>Lit in green: player in operation.<br/>Flashing: receiving information or ejecting the disc.</li><li>7. AV1 AUDIO input.</li><li>8. AV2 AUDIO input.</li><li>9. VIDEO input.</li></ol> |
|---|--|

## INFRA-RED HEADPHONES

**!** The headphones are supplied with the video pack. The presence of an object between the infra-red cell on the monitor and the headphones may result in a reduction in the sound quality.



**Supply:** 2 batteries R03/AAA 1.5 V.

1. 2 channel stereo.
2. On/Off.
3. Volume adjustment.



# 01 FIRST STEPS

## REMOTE CONTROL

1. Power On/Off, Eject.
2. Selection of the source from DVD, audio CD and AUX.
3. Change screen.
4. DVD screen adjustments (brightness, contrast, ...).
5. Selection confirmation.
6. Fast forward/backward.  
In the menus: move the cursor left/right, up/down.
7. Volume increase/decrease.
8. Play/Pause.
9. Next chapter.
10. SHIFT: activation of the yellow buttons.
11. Selection of the audio language.  
With SHIFT: selection of the subtitle language.
12. Change chapter.  
With SHIFT: change title.
13. Previous chapter.
14. Stop play.
15. RETURN:  
Short press: return to the previous menu.  
Long press: return to the main menu.
16. Display the main DVD menu.
17. ZOOM: Selection of different image formats.
18. Display/mask the screen.

**Power:** 2 batteries R03/AAA 1.5 V.

Numeric keypad



## 02 SETUP

### SETUP MENU

1

Press the SETUP button.



2

The SETTINGS menu appears on the screen: VIDEO SETTINGS, LANGUAGES, USERS, DEFAULT SETTINGS.

Select the options using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.



3

Press the OK button to confirm your choice.



### VIDEO SETTINGS

1

Press the SETUP button.  
The SETTINGS menu appears on the screen.



2

Select the VIDEO SETTINGS menu using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.



3

The VIDEO SETTINGS menu appears on the screen: BRIGHTNESS, CONTRAST, COLOUR, BACK-LIGHTING.



4

Select the input required using the ▲ ▼ buttons.



5

Press the OK button to confirm your choice.  
The setting is saved.



# 03 BASIC FUNCTIONS

## SETTING UP THE MONITORS

1

Unlock the table using the button and tilt it down.



2

Using the positioning handles, extract the monitor from the casing.



3

Pivot the monitor upwards until it is in contact with the upper part of the seat. A notch locks it in position.



!

**The monitor is not a touch screen.**

Do not press directly on the surface of the monitor, this may damage the liquid crystal display.

## 03 BASIC FUNCTIONS

### VIDEO PACK ON/OFF

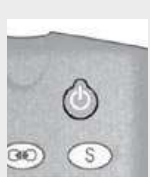
1

To switch on the system, switch on the vehicle's ignition.



2

Press the POWER/EJECT button on the DVD/CD player or on the remote control.



!

When the ignition is off, the video pack will switch off automatically after approximately ten minutes to avoid discharging the battery.

### LOADING/EJECTING A DVD/CD

1

To load a disc, insert it gently, printed face uppermost, until it is fully inserted.



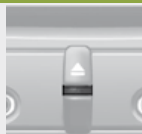
2

Play begins automatically.



1

Press the POWER/EJECT button on the DVD/CD player or remote control.



2

Remove the disc gently.



# 04 SCREEN MENU MAP

1 SETTINGS

1 VIDEO SETTINGS

2 BRIGHTNESS

2 CONTRAST

2 COLOUR

2 BACK-LIGHTING

1 LANGUAGES

2 AUDIO

2 SUBTITLES

2 SETTINGS

1 USERS

2 USER 1

2 USER 2

2 USER 3

1 DEFAULT SETTINGS

2 ARE YOU SURE?

3 YES

3 NO

# 05 FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the video pack.

| QUESTION   | SOLUTION  |
|--|---|
| The player does not start.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Check the vehicle's fuses.</li></ul>  |
| The player does not react to pressing of the remote control buttons.                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- The remote control batteries are flat. Replace them.</li><li>- The remote control sensor is hampered by objects or is dirty. Remove all objects on the remote control receiver or clean the surface using a damp cloth.</li><li>- The video pack has overheated. Let it cool for a few minutes.</li></ul> |
| Image or sound interference while playing a DVD. The image remains frozen during play. | The player cannot read the disc. The disc may be damaged or dirty.  |
| The player does not play the disc inserted.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- The format of the disc does not correspond to the specifications of the player.</li><li>- If it is cold, condensation may have formed on the laser. Wait approximately 5 minutes to allow the humidity to evaporate.</li></ul>  |
| When a DVD/VCD/SVCD is played, the image is of poor quality.                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Remove the disc.</li><li>- Using the SETUP button , adjust the brightness and insert the disc again.</li></ul>  |
| No image is displayed on the monitor.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Press the SOURCE button until the image appears.</li><li>- Press the SCREEN ON/OFF button.</li></ul>  |
| There is no sound in the audio headphones.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Increase the volume using the VOLUME +/- buttons on the remote control or using the dial on the headphones.</li><li>- Check that the correct channel is selected on the headphones.</li><li>- Press the SOURCE button until the sound arrives.</li><li>- Replace the headphone batteries.</li></ul>       |
| The start-up screen does not appear following ejection of the disc.                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Insert another disc.</li><li>- Switch the system off and then on again.</li></ul>   |